

**BMJ**



**PACK**  
Practical Approach to Care Kit

# PACK Global Adult

## Practical Approach to Care Kit

Guide for primary care

2018

**Edition 3**

# About PACK

The Practical Approach to Care Kit (PACK) Adult guide is a comprehensive guide for the primary care of the adult 18 years or older. It uses simple algorithms to evaluate and treat the patient with common symptoms and a standardised checklist format to care for the patient with a chronic condition. It supports the clinician to integrate the care of the patient with multiple problems and wherever possible prompts the diagnosis of priority chronic conditions.

PACK has been developed, tested and refined over a period of 18 years by the Knowledge Translation Unit (KTU), University of Cape Town Lung Institute, in consultation with clinicians and National and Provincial Department of Health managers and policy makers in South Africa.

PACK is designed to support primary health care delivery in low and middle income country settings, where resources and clinical skills are scarce and evidence is often lacking. In an attempt to make the recommendations in the PACK Global Adult guide as evidence-based, pragmatic and relevant as possible, it aligns with BMJ's clinical decision support tool, Best Practice, as well as the latest World Health Organization guidelines, including the 2017 WHO Model List of Essential Medicines. It is designed for use in a setting with a significant HIV and TB burden, as well as covering non-communicable diseases, women's health, mental health and palliative care.

The KTU has built a database that references BMJ Best Practice and sentinel guidelines which inform each of the roughly 3000 screening, diagnostic and management recommendations in PACK Global Adult. This database is designed to support the localisation of the guide to a country-specific setting as well as form the foundation for an annual update of PACK Global Adult to keep up with evolving evidence and updated guidelines.

The Manual for PACK localisation and pilot preparation is a package that will assist the in-country localisation of the PACK Global Adult programme to a policy- and resource-specific setting and provide guidance on preparing the local health system for pilot implementation. It comprises tools to localise the guide content as well as accompanying training materials and health system interventions. The Manual for updating PACK is a package that will assist the in-country localising team to update their local PACK programme on an annual basis.

PACK Global Adult has the potential to enable the task shifting and task sharing needed to make primary care more manageable and more efficient. Doctor and nurse responsibilities can be clearly defined and referral pathways stipulated. All prescribed medications are highlighted in orange. Medications can be colour coded to delineate prescribing provisions for medication in each clinical scenario for the various cadres of health worker and their scope of practice.

## Acknowledgements

This PACK guide was initially developed by Ruth Cornick and Lara Fairall for a South African setting. It was updated and aligned to the latest global research evidence and guidance by Camilla Watrus, Sandy Picken, Ajibola Awotiwon, Emma Carkeek and Juliet Hannington of the Knowledge Translation Unit, University of Cape Town Lung Institute. Its development has been a consultative and iterative one as experience and feedback of previous editions have informed improvements in the content and its presentation. We acknowledge the role that implementing and localising partners have had in the refinement of PACK, especially the City of Cape Town Municipal health department, the Western Cape Provincial Department of Health and the South African National Department of Health and we thank the clinicians, policy makers and end-users for their input into previous editions of this guide.

We acknowledge the sources of the photographs: the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) Public Health Image Library, BMJ Best Practice, the Division of Rheumatology, Faculty of Health Sciences, Stellenbosch University and the patients and staff of the University of Cape Town's Division of Dermatology, Department of Medicine; Division of Otolaryngology, Department of Surgery and School of Public Health and Family Medicine. We acknowledge Pearl Spiller of the Knowledge Translation Unit, University of Cape Town Lung Institute for design and layout and Izak Volgraaf for the illustrations.

SYMPTOMS  
CONTENTS

CHRONIC  
CONDITIONS  
CONTENTS

GENERAL  
HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC  
RESPIRATORY  
DISEASE

CHRONIC  
DISEASES  
OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

MENTAL  
HEALTH

MUSCULO-  
SKELETAL  
DISORDERS

WOMEN'S  
HEALTH

PALLIATIVE  
CARE

# How to use PACK Global Adult

This PACK Global Adult guide is designed to reflect the process of conducting a clinical consultation with an adult patient in primary care:

- It is divided into three main sections: Address the patient's general health, Symptoms and Chronic Conditions.
  - In the stable patient start by addressing the patient's general health then address the patient's symptom/s and/or chronic conditions.
  - In the patient presenting with one or more symptoms, start by identifying the patient's main symptom. Use the Symptoms contents page to find the relevant symptom page in the guide. Decide if the patient needs urgent attention (indicated in the red box) and if not, follow the algorithm to either a management plan or to consider a chronic condition in the chronic condition section of the guide.
  - In the patient known with a chronic condition, use the Chronic Conditions contents page to find that condition in the guide. Go to the colour-coded Routine Care pages for that condition to manage the patient's chronic condition using the 'Assess, Advise and Treat' framework.
- Arrows refer you to another page in the guide:
  - The return arrow (↩) guides you to a new page but suggests that you return and continue on the original page.
  - The direct arrow (→) guides you to continue on another page.
- The assessment tables on the Routine Care pages are arranged in 3 tones to reflect those aspects of the history, examination and investigations to consider.
- Refer to the glossary for abbreviations and units used in PACK Global Adult.
- Navigate around PACK:
  - Jump between content sections by clicking on the buttons in the navigation strip at the bottom of each page.
  - Click on a page number to move to the relevant page.

---

For further information about the **PACK programme**, to order hard copies, buy the eBook or to provide feedback, contact the BMJ or KTU teams:

KTU: [ktu@uct.ac.za](mailto:ktu@uct.ac.za) or [www.knowledgetranslation.co.za/contact-us](http://www.knowledgetranslation.co.za/contact-us) or [www.packglobal.org](http://www.packglobal.org)

BMJ: [support@bmj.com](mailto:support@bmj.com) or [www.bmj.com/company/products-services/#service15](http://www.bmj.com/company/products-services/#service15)

**DISCLAIMER:** The content of this document has been developed for, and is intended for use by, health care professionals working in primary care in low and middle income countries. This information is provided on an "as is" basis without any representations, conditions, guarantees or warranties regarding accuracy, relevance, usefulness or fitness for purpose. Any statements made to the contrary are void. Where you use this content you shall be fully responsible for your interpretation of it. To the fullest extent permitted by law, the University of Cape Town Lung Institute (Pty) Ltd and BMJ Publishing Group Limited shall not be held liable or be responsible for any aspect of healthcare administered in reliance upon, or with the aid of, this information or any other use of this information. Users of the content are strongly advised to consult a variety of sources and use their own professional judgment when treating patients using this information. It is the responsibility of users to ensure that the information contained in this document is appropriate to the care required for each of their patients within their respective geographical regions. The information contained in this document should not be considered a substitute for such professional judgment.

SYMPTOMS  
CONTENTS

CHRONIC  
CONDITIONS  
CONTENTS

GENERAL  
HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC  
RESPIRATORY  
DISEASE

CHRONIC  
DISEASES  
OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

MENTAL  
HEALTH

MUSCULO-  
SKELETAL  
DISORDERS

WOMEN'S  
HEALTH

PALLIATIVE  
CARE

# Contents

## Address the patient's general health 8

### Symptoms

#### A

Abused patient	68
Abdominal pain	31
Abnormal vaginal bleeding	42
Abnormal thoughts/behaviour	66
Aggressive patient	65
Anal symptoms	34
Arm symptoms	48

#### B

Back pain	47
Bites	52
Blackout	18
Body pain	45
Breast symptoms	30
Breathing difficulty	28
Burn/s	51

#### C

Cardiac arrest	10
Cervical screening	40
Chest pain	27
Collapse	18
Coma	11
Condom broken	70
Confused patient	66
Constipation	34
Cough	28

#### D

Dental symptoms	26
Diarrhoea	33
Disruptive patient	65
Dizziness	19
Dyspepsia	31
Discharge, genital	35

#### E

Ear/hearing symptoms	23
Emergency patient	10
Eye symptoms	21
Exposure to infectious fluids	70

#### F

Face symptoms	22
Faint	18
Falls	18
Fatigue	17
Fever	15
Fits	13
Foot symptoms	50
Foot care	50
Fracture	12

#### G

Genital symptoms	35
Gum symptoms	26

#### H

Hair loss	62
Headache	20
Hearing problems	23
Heartburn	31

#### I

Injured patient	12
Itch	53

#### J

Jaundice	53
Joint symptoms	46

#### L

Leg symptoms	49
Lump, neck/axilla/groin	16
Lump, skin	53
Lymphadenopathy	16

#### M

Miserable patient	67
Mouth symptoms	25

#### N

Nail symptoms	63
Nausea	32
Neck pain	48
Needlestick injury	124
Nose symptoms	24

#### O

Overweight patient	87
--------------------	----

#### P

Pain, back	47
Pain, body/general	45
Pain, chest	27
Pain, neck	48
Pain, skin	53
Pap smear	40
Pimples	53

#### R

Rape	68
Rash	53
Respiratory arrest	10

#### S

Scalp symptoms	53
Scrotal symptoms	35

Seizures	13
Suicidal thoughts/self-harm	64
Sexual assault	68
Sexual problems	43
Sexually transmitted infection (STI)	35
Skin symptoms	53
Sleeping difficulty	69
Smoking	104
Stings	52
Stressed patient	67
Syphilis	41

#### T

Teeth symptoms	26
Throat symptoms	25
Tiredness	17
Traumatised patient	68

#### U

Ulcer, genital	35
Ulcer, skin	53
Unconscious patient	11
Unsafe sex	70
Urinary symptoms	44

#### V

Vaginal bleeding	42
Violent patient	65
Vision symptoms	21
Vomiting	32

#### W

Weakness	17
Weight loss	14
Wheeze	29
Wound	12

## Chronic conditions

### Tuberculosis (TB)

Tuberculosis (TB): diagnosis	72
Drug-sensitive (DS) TB: routine care	74

### HIV

HIV: diagnosis	77
HIV: routine care	78

### Chronic respiratory disease

Asthma and COPD: diagnosis	83
Using inhalers and spacers	83
Using a peak expiratory flow meter	84
Asthma: routine care	85
COPD: routine care	86

### Chronic diseases of lifestyle

Cardiovascular disease (CVD) risk: diagnosis	87
Cardiovascular disease (CVD) risk: routine care	88
Diabetes: diagnosis	89
Diabetes: routine care	90
Hypertension: diagnosis	92
Hypertension: routine care	93
Heart failure	94
Stroke	95
Ischaemic heart disease (IHD): initial assessment	96
Ischaemic heart disease (IHD): routine care	97
Peripheral vascular disease (PVD)	98

### Epilepsy

99

### Mental health

Admit the mentally ill patient	100
Depression: diagnosis	101
Depression and/or anxiety: routine care	102
Tobacco smoking	104
Alcohol/drug use	105
Schizophrenia	106
Dementia	108

### Musculoskeletal disorders

Chronic arthritis	109
Gout	110
Fibromyalgia	111

### Women's health

Contraception	112
The pregnant patient	114
Routine antenatal care	116
Routine postnatal care	118
Prevention of mother-to-child transmission (PMTCT) of HIV	120
Menopause	121

### Palliative care

122

## Other pages

Prescribe rationally	7
Exposed to infectious fluid: post-exposure prophylaxis	70

Protect yourself from occupational infection	124
Protect yourself from occupational stress	125

Communicate effectively	126
Support the patient to make a change	127

SYMPTOMS  
CONTENTS

CHRONIC  
CONDITIONS  
CONTENTS

GENERAL  
HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC  
RESPIRATORY  
DISEASE

CHRONIC  
DISEASES  
OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

MENTAL  
HEALTH

MUSCULO-  
SKELETAL  
DISORDERS

WOMEN'S  
HEALTH

PALLIATIVE  
CARE

# Glossary

## A

ACR	albumin creatinine ratio
AGUS	atypical glandular cells of undetermined significance
ALP	alkaline phosphatase
ALT	alanine aminotransferase
ART	antiretroviral therapy
ASC-H	atypical squamous cells, cannot exclude HSIL
ASC-US	atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance
AST	aspartate aminotransferase

## B

BMI	body mass index
BP	blood pressure measured in millimeters of mercury [mmHg]

## C

CD4	count of the lymphocytes with a CD4 surface marker
COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CRP	c-reactive protein
Cu-IUD	copper intrauterine device
CVD	cardiovascular disease

## D

DBP	diastolic blood pressure
DMPA	depot medroxyprogesterone acetate
DR-TB	drug-resistant tuberculosis
DS-TB	drug-sensitive tuberculosis
DST	drug susceptibility testing
DVT	deep vein thrombosis

## E

ECG	electrocardiogram
EDD	estimated date of delivery
eGFR	estimated glomerular filtration rate
ELISA	enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
ESR	erythrocyte sedimentation rate

## G

GCS	glasgow coma scale
GGT	gamma-glutamyl transferase

## H

Hb	haemoglobin
HbA <sub>1c</sub>	glycated haemoglobin
HBsAb	hepatitis B surface antibody
HBsAg	hepatitis B surface antigen
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HPV	human papillomavirus
HSIL	high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion

## I

IM	intramuscular
IMCI	integrated management of childhood illness
INR	international normalized ratio
IPT	isoniazid preventive therapy
IU	international units
IUD	intrauterine device
IV	intravenous

## L

LSIL	low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion
------	---

## M

MTB	<i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i>
MTB/RIF	<i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> DNA and resistance to rifampicin
MU	million units

## N

NET-EN	norethisterone enanthate
NSAIDs	non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs

## P

PJP	<i>pneumocystis jiroveci</i> pneumonia
PCR	polymerase chain reaction
PEFR	peak expiratory flow rate
PEP	post-exposure prophylaxis
PMTCT	prevention of mother-to-child-transmission
PPE	papular pruritic eruption
PPD	purified protein derivative
Pulse rate	measured in beats per minute
PVD	peripheral vascular disease

## R

RF	rheumatoid factor
RPR	rapid plasmin reagin
Respiratory rate	measured in breaths per minute

## S

SBP	systolic blood pressure
STI	sexually transmitted infection

## T

TB	tuberculosis
TBSA	total body surface area
Td	tetanus and diphtheria vaccine
Tdap	tetanus, diphtheria, acellular pertussis vaccine
TIA	transient ischaemic attack
TOP	termination of pregnancy
TSH	thyroid stimulating hormone
TST	tuberculin skin test

# Prescribe rationally

## Assess the patient needing a prescription

Assess	Note
Diagnosis	Confirm the patient's diagnosis, that the medication is necessary and that its benefits outweigh the risks.
Other conditions	It may be necessary to adjust dose (e.g. lamivudine in kidney disease) or give alternative medication (e.g. avoid ibuprofen if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease).
Other medications	Check if all medication (prescribed, over-the-counter, herbal) is necessary and for possible interactions, especially if on hormonal contraception, ART, TB or epilepsy treatment.
Allergies	If known allergy or previous bad reaction to medication, give alternative or discuss with doctor.
Age	If > 65 years: consider using lower medication doses (give full doses of antibiotics and ART) and avoiding unnecessary medications. Discuss with doctor if patient on diazepam, amitriptyline, theophylline, codeine, ibuprofen, amlodipine or fluoxetine or using $\geq 5$ medications.
Pregnant/breastfeeding	If pregnant or breastfeeding check if the medication is safe.
Response to treatment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the patient's condition does not improve, assess adherence to treatment and consider changing the treatment or an alternative diagnosis. If on antibiotic, check for resistance.</li> <li>• Check for side effects and report possible adverse reaction/s to medication.</li> </ul>

## Advise the patient needing a prescription

- Explain why the medication is needed, what effect it will have and what will happen if it is taken incorrectly.
- Explain when and how to take the medication and for how long. Ask the patient to repeat your explanation to ensure s/he understands.
- Educate on the importance of adherence and that not adhering to medication may lead to relapse or worsening of the condition and possible resistance to the medication.
- Advise of possible side effects to the medication and what to do if they occur.
- Over-the-counter medications and herbal treatments may interfere with prescribed medication. Encourage patient to discuss with prescriber before using them.

## Treat the patient needing a prescription

- Ensure that the appropriate prescriber writes the prescription.
- If unsure about your medicine choice and dosing, side-effects or medication interactions, consult a medicines formulary, experienced colleagues or pharmacist.
- Ensure that the prescription contains all the detail it needs - see sample prescription. Write legibly.
- If the patient needs an antibiotic, try to avoid antibiotic resistance:
  - Confirm that patient needs the antibiotic.
  - If possible, take microbiological samples before starting antibiotic and adjust treatment with results.
  - Prescribe the shortest effective course at the appropriate dose and route.

Prescriber name, address, contact details

Date

Generic name of medicine

Dose, strength, frequency, route and quantity of medicine, instructions and warnings

Patient name, address, age

Prescriber signature

## PRESCRIPTION

Dr G. Robert  
Harley Street  
Cape Town  
South Africa  
Tel: +27 21 791 2114

Date: 01/02/2016

Treatment:

*Amoxicillin*

*500mg 8 hourly orally for 5 days*

Name: *Mr Jeremy Deeds*  
Address: *14 Lexington Avenue*  
Age: *57*

Signature

SYMPTOMS  
CONTENTS

CHRONIC  
CONDITIONS  
CONTENTS

GENERAL  
HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC  
RESPIRATORY  
DISEASE

CHRONIC  
DISEASES  
OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

MENTAL  
HEALTH

MUSCULO-  
SKELETAL  
DISORDERS

WOMEN'S  
HEALTH

PALLIATIVE  
CARE

# Address the patient's general health

## Assess the patient's general health at every visit

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	Manage symptoms as on symptom pages.
TB	Every visit	If cough $\geq$ 2 weeks, weight loss, night sweats, fever $\geq$ 2 weeks, chest pain on breathing or blood-stained sputum, exclude TB <a href="#">↗72</a> .
Family planning	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Discuss patient's contraception needs <a href="#">↗112</a> and pregnancy plans. If pregnant, give antenatal care <a href="#">↗116</a>.</li> <li>If HIV positive and planning pregnancy, advise patient to use contraception until viral load <math>&lt;</math> 1000copies/mL.</li> </ul>
Sexual health	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ask about genital symptoms <a href="#">↗35</a>.</li> <li>Ask about sexual orientation, risky behaviour (patient or partner has new or <math>&gt;</math> 1 partner, unreliable condom use or risky alcohol/drug use <a href="#">↗105</a>) and sexual problems <a href="#">↗43</a>.</li> </ul>
Depression	Every visit	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either <a href="#">↗101</a> .
Alcohol/drug use	Every visit	In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk $\geq$ 4 drinks <sup>1</sup> /session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any <a href="#">↗105</a> .
Smoking	Every visit	If patient smokes tobacco <a href="#">↗104</a> . Support patient to change <a href="#">↗127</a> .
Older person risk	Every visit if $>$ 65 years	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If patient has a change in function, confusion or strange behaviour <a href="#">↗66</a>.</li> <li>If for at least 6 months <math>\geq</math> 1 of: memory problems, disorientation, language difficulty, less able to cope with daily activities and work/social function: consider dementia <a href="#">↗108</a>.</li> <li>Consider using lower medication doses (give full doses of antibiotics and ART) and avoiding unnecessary medications. Discuss with doctor if patient on diazepam, amitriptyline, theophylline, codeine, ibuprofen, amlodipine or fluoxetine or is using <math>\geq</math> 5 medications.</li> </ul>
CVD risk	If $\geq$ 40 years or $\geq$ 2 risk factors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Assess CVD risk <a href="#">↗87</a> at first visit, then depending on risk.</li> <li>Risk factors: smoking, parent/sibling with premature CVD (man <math>&lt;</math> 55 years or woman <math>&lt;</math> 65 years), BMI <math>&gt;</math> 25, waist circumference <math>&gt;</math> 80cm (woman) or 94cm (man), hypertension, diabetes, cholesterol <math>&gt;</math> 5.2mmol/L.</li> </ul>
BP	First visit, then depending on result	Check BP <a href="#">↗92</a> .
BMI	Yearly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BMI = weight (kg) <math>\div</math> height (m) <math>\div</math> height (m).</li> <li>If BMI <math>&gt;</math> 25 <a href="#">↗87</a>. If BMI <math>&lt;</math> 18.5, refer for nutritional support.</li> </ul>
Diabetes screen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If <math>\geq</math> 45 years</li> <li>If BMI <math>\geq</math> 25 <i>and</i> <math>\geq</math> 1 other risk factor</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check glucose <a href="#">↗89</a> at first visit, then depending on result.</li> <li>Other risk factors: hypertension, cardiovascular disease, physical inactivity, family history of diabetes, high risk ancestry, previous gestational diabetes or big baby, previous impaired glucose tolerance or impaired fasting glucose.</li> </ul>
HIV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If status unknown</li> <li>If sexually active: yearly</li> <li>If pregnant: at 32 weeks gestation</li> </ul>	Test for HIV <a href="#">↗77</a> .
Cervical screen	When needed	Do cervical screen <a href="#">↗40</a> .
Breast check	First visit, then yearly	Check for lumps in breasts <a href="#">↗30</a> and axillae <a href="#">↗16</a> .

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.



### Advise the patient about his/her general health

- Ask the patient about his/her concerns and expectations from this visit, and try to address these.
- Educate that not all tests, treatments and procedures help prevent or treat disease. Some provide little or no benefit and may even cause harm.
- Help patient to choose lifestyle changes to improve and maintain his/her general health. Support the patient to change [127](#).

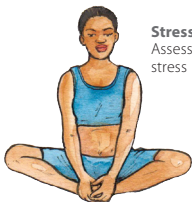
#### Smoking

If patient smokes tobacco [104](#).



#### Stress

Assess and manage stress [67](#).



#### Be sun safe

- Avoid sun exposure, especially between 10h00 and 15h00.
- Use sunscreen and protective clothing (e.g. hat) when outdoors.



#### Have safe sex

- Have only 1 partner at a time.
- If HIV negative, test for HIV between partners.
- Advise partner to test for HIV.
- Use condoms.



#### Physical activity

- Aim for at least 30 minutes of moderate exercise (e.g. brisk walking) on most days of the week.
- Increase activities of daily living like gardening, housework, walking instead of taking transport, using stairs instead of lifts.
- Exercise with arms if unable to use legs.



#### Avoid alcohol/drug use

- Limit alcohol intake < 2 drinks<sup>1</sup>/day and avoid alcohol on at least 2 days of the week.
- In the past year, has patient:
  - 1) drunk  $\geq$  4 drinks<sup>1</sup>/session,
  - 2) used illegal drugs or
  - 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications?
 If yes to any [105](#).



#### Road safety

- Use pedestrian crossings to cross the road.
- Use a seat belt.
- Avoid using alcohol/drugs if driving.

#### Diet

- Eat a variety of foods in moderation. Reduce portion sizes.
- Increase fruit and vegetables.
- Reduce fatty foods: eat low fat food, cut off animal fat.
- Reduce salty processed foods like gravies, stock cubes, packet soup. Avoid adding salt to food.
- Avoid/use less sugar.



### Treat preventively to maintain the patient's general health

- If woman < 50 years and not pregnant, give single dose **albendazole** 400mg or single dose **mebendazole** 500mg yearly.
- If woman planning pregnancy, give **folic acid** 400mcg daily until 3 months after delivery.
- Review the patient's immunisation history and give if needed:

Vaccine	When	Note
Influenza	If health worker, $\geq$ 65 years, pregnant, HIV or chronic lung disease	Give <b>influenza vaccine</b> 0.5mL IM yearly.
Tetanus, diphtheria, pertussis	If pregnant	Check if tetanus, diphtheria and pertussis immunisations are up to date (3 doses of tetanus/diphtheria in the past): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If up to date, give 1 dose of <b>tetanus, diphtheria, acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccine</b> at 27-36 weeks gestation.</li> <li>• If not up to date/unknown, give 3 doses <b>tetanus and diphtheria (Td) vaccine</b>: immediately, then after 1 and then 6 months. Ensure 1 dose also contains acellular pertussis (<b>Tdap</b>), ideally at 27-36 weeks gestation.</li> </ul>

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# The emergency patient

## Give urgent attention to the emergency patient:

Does patient respond to your voice?

No: call for help and defibrillator.  
Feel for carotid pulse for maximum of 10 seconds.

Yes

No pulse felt or unsure

Pulse felt

Start CPR<sup>1</sup>:

- Give cycles of 30 chest compressions and 2 breaths (at rate of at least 100 compressions/minute).
- Check rhythm on defibrillator. If shockable, give 1 shock and immediately resume CPR.
- Give **epinephrine** 1mL (1:1000 solution) IV, followed by 5mL **sterile water**. Repeat every 3-5 minutes.
- Check rhythm every 2 minutes (5 cycles) and shock if needed. If not shockable, check for pulse:
  - If definite pulse returns, stop CPR and check breathing (as adjacent).
  - If no pulse, continue CPR for at least 30 minutes<sup>2</sup>.

Is patient breathing?

No

Yes

- Give 1 breath every 6 seconds.
- Recheck pulse every 2 minutes.
- If no pulse, start CPR (as adjacent).

## Assess and manage airway, breathing, circulation and level of consciousness

### Airway

- If airway obstructed (snoring, gurgling, noisy breathing), open with head-tilt and chin-lift. If injured, use jaw-thrust instead, keeping neck stable.
- Remove foreign bodies from mouth and suction fluids.
- If unconscious, insert oropharyngeal airway. If patient resists, gags or vomits, use lubricated nasopharyngeal airway instead.
- Intubate if unable to maintain airway with oro- or nasopharyngeal airway.

### Breathing

- If difficulty breathing or oxygen saturation < 90%, give face mask oxygen.
- If respiratory rate < 9 or blue lips/tongue, connect bag valve mask to oxygen and slowly deliver each breath with the patient.
- Intubate if using bag valve mask and still difficulty breathing, oxygen saturation < 90% or blue lips/tongue.
- If sudden breathlessness, more resonant/decreased breath sounds/pain on 1 side, deviated trachea: **tension pneumothorax** likely:
  - Insert large bore cannula above 3rd rib in mid-clavicular line.
  - Arrange urgent chest tube.

### Circulation

- Establish IV access.
- If BP < 90/60, pulse  $\geq$  100 or heavy bleeding, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- Stop bleeding: apply pressure and elevate limb. If bleeding still severe, apply tourniquet above injury.

### Level of consciousness

- Assess Glasgow Coma Score (GCS):

#### Glasgow Coma Score (GCS)

Best motor response	Best verbal response	Eye opening
6 Obeys commands	5 Orientated	4 Spontaneous
5 Localises to pain	4 Confused	3 To voice
4 Withdraws from pain	3 Inappropriate words	2 To pain
3 Abnormal flexion to pain	2 Incomprehensible sounds	1 None
2 Extends to pain	1 None	
1 None		

- Add scores to give single score out of 15:
  - If GCS  $\leq$  8, intubate patient.

## Manage further according to disability and symptoms:

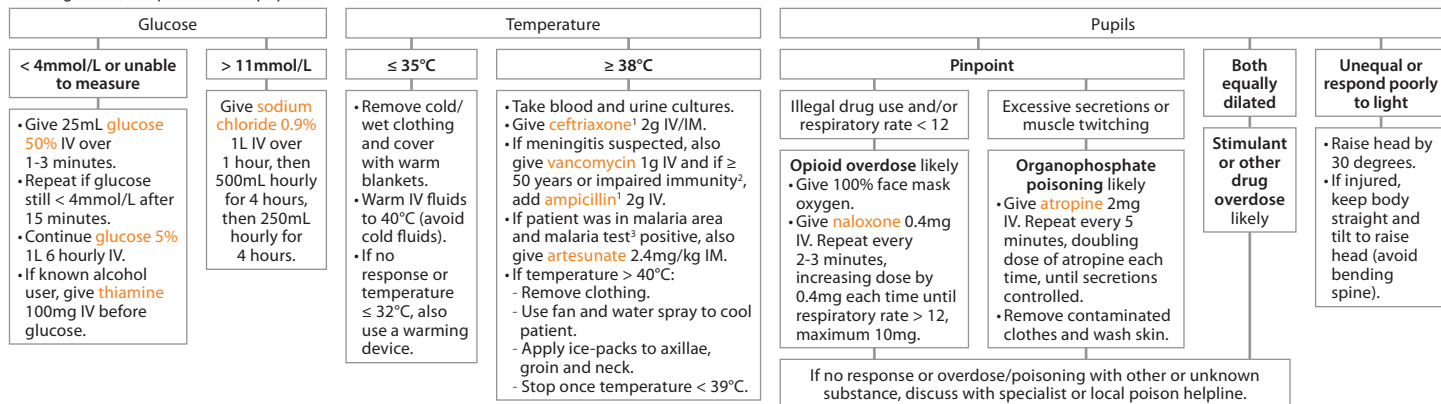
- If pupils unequal or respond poorly to light, raise head by 30 degrees. If injured, keep body straight and tilt to raise head (avoid bending spine).
- Apply rigid neck collar and sandbags/blocks on either side of head if injured with: head injury, GCS < 15, neck/spine tenderness, weak/numb limb or abnormal pupils. If needing to move patient, use spine board.
- Identify all injuries and look for cause: undress patient and assess front and back. If injured, use log-roll to turn. Then cover and keep warm.
- Assess patient further according to symptoms. Manage symptoms as on symptom pages. If unconscious  $\rightarrow$  11. If injured  $\rightarrow$  12.

<sup>1</sup>If the patient has a life-limiting illness, consider whether or not to proceed. <sup>2</sup>Continue CPR for longer if temperature <35°C, patient drowned, poisoned or took medication.

# The unconscious patient

## Give urgent attention to the unconscious patient:

- First assess and manage airway, breathing, circulation and level of consciousness [10](#).
- Identify all injuries and look for cause: undress patient and assess front and back. If injured, use log-roll to turn. Then cover and keep warm.
- If fits, injuries or burns, also manage on symptom pages.
- If sudden diffuse rash or face/tongue swelling, **anaphylaxis** likely:
  - Raise legs and give face mask oxygen.
  - Give immediately **epinephrine** 0.5mL (1:1000 solution) IM into mid outer thigh. Repeat every 5-15 minutes if needed.
  - Give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 1-2L IV rapidly regardless of BP. Then, if BP < 90/60, also give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- Check glucose, temperature and pupils:



- Refer urgently.
- While awaiting transport:
  - Check BP, pulse, respiratory rate, oxygen saturation and GCS every 15 minutes. Insert urinary catheter.
  - If BP < 90/60, pulse > 100 or < 50, respiratory rate > 20 or < 9, oxygen saturation < 90% or drop in GCS, reassess and manage airway, breathing, circulation and level of consciousness [10](#).

<sup>1</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>Known with HIV or lymphoma, pregnant or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids. <sup>3</sup>Test for malaria with parasite slide microscopy or if unavailable, rapid diagnostic test.

# The injured patient

## Give urgent attention to the injured patient:

- First assess and manage airway, breathing, circulation and level of consciousness [↗10](#).
- Identify all injuries and look for cause: undress patient and assess front and back. If head or spine injury, use log-roll to turn. Then cover and keep warm.

### Bruising and blood in urine

- Give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 1L IV hourly for 2 hours.
- Once urine output > 200mL/hour, give 500mL hourly.
- Stop if breathing worsens.

### Wound and one or more of:

- Poor perfusion (cold, pale, numb, no pulse) below injury
- Excessive or pulsatile bleeding
- Penetrating wound to head/neck/chest/abdomen
- Give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- If excessive or pulsatile bleeding, apply direct pressure and elevate limb.
- If bleeding severe and persists, apply tourniquet above injury.

### Fracture and one or more of:

- Poor perfusion (cold, pale, numb, no pulse) below fracture
- Increasing pain, muscle tightness, numbness in limb
- Suspected femur, pelvis or spine fracture
- Weakness/numbness below fracture
- Open fracture
- > 3 rib fractures
- Severe deformity
- Give **morphine sulphate** 5mg IV.
- If poor perfusion or weakness/numbness below fracture, gently re-align into normal position.
- If open fracture: remove foreign material, irrigate with **sodium chloride 0.9%** and cover with saline-soaked gauze. Give **cefazolin**<sup>1</sup> 1g IV.
- Splint limb to immobilise joint above and below fracture.
- If pelvic fracture, tie sheet tightly around hips to immobilise.

### Head injury and one or more of:

- Any loss of consciousness
- Seizure/fit
- Severe headache
- Amnesia
- Suspected skull fracture
- Bruising around eyes or behind ears
- Blood behind eardrum
- Blood or clear fluid leaking from nose or ear
- Pupils unequal or respond poorly to light
- Weak/numb limb/s
- Vomiting ≥ 2 times
- ≥ 1 other injury
- Drug or alcohol intoxication
- If GCS < 15, neck/spine tenderness, weak/numb limb or abnormal pupils, apply rigid neck collar and sandbags/blocks on either side of head.
- If pupils unequal or respond poorly to light, keep body straight and tilt to raise head (avoid bending spine).
- If fits, give **phenytoin** 20mg/kg IV over 60 minutes (avoid giving lorazepam/diazepam).

- Refer urgently. While awaiting transport, check BP, pulse, respiratory rate, oxygen saturation and GCS every 15 minutes.
- If BP < 90/60, pulse > 100 or < 50, respiratory rate > 20 or < 9, oxygen saturation < 90% or drop in GCS, reassess and manage airway, breathing, circulation and level of consciousness [↗10](#).

## Approach to the injured patient not needing urgent attention

- Refer same day if pregnant, known bleeding disorder, on anticoagulant, involved in high-speed collision, ejected from or hit by vehicle or fell > 3 metres.
- If open wound, give **tetanus toxoid** 0.5mL IM if none in past 5 years. If < 3 tetanus vaccine doses in lifetime, also give **tetanus immunoglobulin** 250 units IM at different site to toxoid with separate syringe.
- Screen for alcohol/drug use: in the past year, has patient: 1) drunk ≥ 4 drinks/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any [↗105](#).
- If assault or abuse [↗68](#).

### Wound

- Apply direct pressure to stop bleeding.
- Remove foreign material, loose/dead skin. Irrigate with **sodium chloride 0.9%** or dilute **povidone iodine** solution if dirty.
- If sutures needed: suture and apply **mupirocin 2%** ointment and non-adherent dressing for 24 hours.
- Avoid suturing if > 12 hours (body), > 24 hours (head/neck), remaining foreign material, infected, gunshot or deep puncture:
  - Pack wound with saline-soaked gauze and give **amoxicillin/clavulanate**<sup>1</sup> 500/125mg 8 hourly for 5 days.
  - Review in 2 days. Suture if needed and no infection unless gunshot/deep puncture (irrigate and dress every 2 days instead).
- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- Advise patient to return if signs of infection (red, warm, painful, swollen, smelly or pus).
- Remove sutures after 5 days (face), 4 days (neck), 10 days (leg) or 7 days (rest of body).
- Refer if unable to close wound easily, weakness/numbness below injury or cosmetic concerns.

### Fracture

- Splint limb to immobilise joint above and below fracture.
- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly and add **codeine** 30mg 4 hourly if needed.
- Do x-rays and refer to doctor same day.

### Head injury

- Observe for 2 hours before discharging with carer.
- If mild headache, dizziness or mental fogging, **concussion** likely:
  - Advise complete rest for 2 days. If no symptoms after 3 days, gradually increase exertion.
  - Advise that recovery can take > 1 month.
- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- Advise to return immediately if any of above symptoms of severity develop.

<sup>1</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Seizures/fits

## Give urgent attention to the patient who is unconscious and fitting:

- If current head injury →12.
- Place in left lateral lying (recovery) position and give 100% face mask oxygen.
- Establish IV access.
- If glucose < 4mmol/L or unable to measure, give 25mL **glucose 50%** IV over 1-3 minutes. Repeat if glucose still < 4mmol/L after 15 minutes. Continue **glucose 5%** 1L 6 hourly IV. If known alcohol user, give **thiamine** 100mg IV before glucose.
- If ≥ 20 weeks pregnant up to 1 week postpartum →114.
- If not pregnant or < 20 weeks pregnant, give **lorazepam** 4mg slow IV or **diazepam** 10mg slow IV or rectally. If still fitting after 10 minutes, repeat dose.
- If still fitting 10 minutes after second dose of lorazepam/diazepam or patient does not recover consciousness between fits:
  - Give **phenytoin**<sup>1</sup> 20mg/kg IV over 60 minutes (give phenytoin through different line to lorazepam/diazepam). If still fitting, repeat **phenytoin**<sup>1</sup> 10mg/kg IV over 30 minutes.
  - Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient who is not fitting now

Confirm that patient indeed had a fit: jerking movements of part of or the whole body, usually lasting < 3 minutes. May have had tongue biting, incontinence, post-fit drowsiness and confusion.

Yes

### Refer patient same day if one or more of:

- Temperature ≥ 38°C or neck stiffness/meningism: give **ceftriaxone**<sup>2</sup> 2g IV/IM and **vancomycin** 1g IV. If ≥ 50 years or impaired immunity<sup>3</sup>, also give **ampicillin**<sup>2</sup> 2g IV. If patient was in malaria area, and malaria test<sup>4</sup> positive, also give **artesunate** 2.4mg/kg IM.
- New/different headache or headache getting worse/more frequent
- Patient with HIV and no known epilepsy
- Reduced level of consciousness > 1 hour after fit
- Glucose < 4mmol/L one hour after treatment or patient on gliclazide/insulin
- Glucose > 11mmol/L →89.
- New sudden asymmetric weakness or numbness, difficulty speaking or visual disturbance
- BP ≥ 180/110 more than one hour after fit has stopped
- Alcohol/drug overdose or withdrawal
- Recent head injury
- Pregnant or up to 1 week postpartum. If ≥ 20 weeks pregnant and just had fit →114.

No

New sudden asymmetric weakness or numbness of face, arm or leg; difficulty speaking or visual disturbance

**Stroke or TIA**  
likely →95.

Collapse with twitching lasting < 15 seconds following flushing, dizziness, nausea, sweating and with rapid recovery

**Common faint**  
likely →18.

If diagnosis uncertain, refer.

## Approach to the patient who had a fit but does not need same day referral

Is the patient known with epilepsy?

Yes

Give routine **epilepsy** care →99.

No

- Check full blood count, eGFR, urea, sodium, calcium and magnesium and discuss with doctor.
- If focal seizures or new fits after meningitis, stroke or head trauma, discuss with specialist.
- If patient had ≥ 2 definite fits with no identifiable cause, doctor to consider epilepsy and give routine care →99.

<sup>1</sup>IV phenytoin can cause low blood pressure and heart dysrhythmia: maximum infusion rate is 50mg/minute; monitor ECG and BP. <sup>2</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor. <sup>3</sup>Known with HIV or lymphoma, pregnant or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids. <sup>4</sup>Test for malaria with parasite slide microscopy or if unavailable, rapid diagnostic test.

# Weight loss

- Check that the patient who says s/he has unintentionally lost weight has indeed done so. Compare current weight with previous records and ask if clothes still fit.
- Investigate unintentional weight loss of  $\geq 5\%$  of body weight in last 6 months.

## First check for TB, HIV and diabetes

### Exclude TB

- Start workup for TB [↗72](#).
- At the same time test for HIV [↗77](#) and diabetes [↗89](#) and consider other causes below.

### Test for HIV

Test for HIV [↗77](#). If HIV positive, give routine care [↗78](#).

### Check for diabetes

Check glucose [↗89](#).

## Ask about symptoms of common cancers

Abnormal vaginal discharge/bleeding

Breast lump/s or nipple discharge

Urinary symptoms in man

Change in bowel habit

Cough  $\geq 2$  weeks, blood-stained sputum, long smoking history

Consider **cervical cancer**. Do a speculum examination and Pap smear [↗40](#).

Consider **breast cancer**. Examine breasts and axillae [↗30](#).

Consider **prostate cancer**. Do rectal examination. If hard, nodular prostate, refer.

Consider **bowel cancer**. If mass on abdominal or rectal examination or stool occult blood positive, refer.

Consider **lung cancer**. Do chest x-ray. If suspicious, refer.

## If food intake inadequate, look for cause/s

Nausea and/or vomiting

Loss of appetite

Assess and manage stress [↗67](#).

No money for food

The patient has a life-limiting illness.

Sore mouth or difficulty swallowing

[↗32](#).

- Eat small frequent meals.
- Advise patient to eat nutrient dense foods (soya, meat, fish, nuts and seeds, beans, lentils, potatoes, rice, barley, wheat, maize).

If available, refer to social worker.

Consider giving palliative care [↗122](#).

**Oral/oesophageal candida** likely [↗25](#).

- If none of above, check TSH if any of: pulse  $\geq 100$ , palpitations, tremor, dislike of hot weather or thyroid enlargement. If abnormal, refer to doctor.
- In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either [↗101](#).
- Screen for alcohol/drug use: in the past year, has patient: 1) drunk  $\geq 4$  drinks<sup>1</sup>/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any [↗105](#).
- Ask about neglect in the older or ill patient needing care. If yes, refer to social worker.

**If persistent documented weight loss and no obvious cause, refer within 1 month for further investigation.**

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Fever

## Give urgent attention to the patient with fever (temperature $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$ now or in the past 3 days) and one or more of:

- Fits [213](#)
- Drowsiness, confusion or agitation
- Neck stiffness/meningism
- Respiratory rate  $> 30$  or difficulty breathing
- BP  $< 90/60$
- Severe abdominal or back pain
- Jaundice
- Easy bleeding or bruising
- Unable to sit up or walk unaided

### Management:

- If BP  $< 90/60$ , give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP  $> 90$ . Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- Give **ceftriaxone**<sup>1</sup> 2g IV/IM. If meningitis suspected, also give **vancomycin** 1g IV and if  $\geq 50$  years or impaired immunity<sup>2</sup>, add **ampicillin**<sup>1</sup> 2g IV.
- If patient was in a malaria area in past 3 months and malaria test<sup>3</sup> positive: give **artesunate** 2.4mg/kg IM and if glucose  $< 3\text{mmol/L}$  give 250mL **glucose 10%** IV. Repeat if glucose still  $< 3\text{mmol/L}$  after 15 minutes. Continue **glucose 5%** 1L 6 hourly IV.
- If on abacavir, check for urgent side effects [282](#).
- If pregnant with travel to Zika area and any of: rash, joint pain or red eyes during/within 2 weeks of travel, refer for investigation.
- Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with fever (temperature $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$ now or in the past 3 days) not needing urgent attention

If cough [228](#); sore throat [225](#); blocked/runny nose [224](#); lower abdominal pain [231](#); vaginal discharge [237](#); urinary symptoms [244](#); rash [253](#); diarrhoea [233](#).

Has patient been in a malaria area in past 3 months?

Yes: do a malaria test<sup>2</sup>

No

Malaria test positive  
Has patient received treatment for malaria in previous 4 weeks?

No

Yes

Malaria test negative  
• Consider other cause of fever below.  
• If fever persists after 2 days, repeat a malaria test<sup>3</sup>.

### Give 1st line treatment:

- Give **artemether/lumefantrine** 80/480mg with food/milk: immediately, then after 8 hours, then 12 hourly for 2 days (total of 6 doses).
- If pregnant in 1st trimester give instead for 7 days: **quinine sulphate** 10mg/kg 12 hourly and **clindamycin** 10mg/kg 12 hourly.
- If pregnant, unable to tolerate oral medication or symptoms of severity develop (as above), refer same day.

If initially diagnosed with rapid diagnostic test, confirm with parasite slide microscopy<sup>4</sup>.

Positive

Negative

### Give 2nd line treatment:

- Give **artesunate/amodiaquine** 200/540mg daily for 3 days.
- If patient on zidovudine or efavirenz, give instead **artesunate/mefloquine** 200/440mg daily for 3 days.
- If pregnant in 1st trimester, give instead for 7 days: **artesunate** 4mg/kg daily and **clindamycin** 10mg/kg 12 hourly.
- If pregnant, unable to tolerate oral medication or symptoms of severity develop (as above), refer same day.

### Consider other cause of fever:

- If patient has any other symptoms, manage as on symptom pages.
- If fever  $\geq 2$  weeks, exclude TB [272](#).
- Test for HIV [277](#). If HIV positive, give routine care [278](#).
- If cause uncertain or fever persists for  $> 3$  weeks, refer.

<sup>1</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>Known with HIV or lymphoma, pregnant or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids. <sup>3</sup>Test for malaria with parasite slide microscopy or if unavailable, rapid diagnostic test. <sup>4</sup>If parasite slide microscopy unavailable, refer for confirmation of diagnosis.

# Lump/s in neck, axilla or groin

## Approach to the patient with lump/s in neck, axilla or groin

- If lump is in the skin →53.
- If lump is beneath the skin, first exclude thyroid mass, hernia and aneurysm:
  - Lump in neck that moves up when patient swallows, **thyroid mass** likely: check TSH and refer for further investigation.
  - Lump in groin that gets bigger when patient stands up or coughs, **inguinal hernia** likely: refer. If severe pain or cannot be reduced, refer urgently.
- Pulsating lump, **aneurysm** likely: refer.
- If none of the above, a lump in neck, axilla or groin is likely an enlarged lymph node (lymphadenopathy). If unsure, refer.

Is lymphadenopathy localised (neck or axilla or groin) or generalised (≥ 2 areas)?

Generalised lymphadenopathy

Localised lymphadenopathy  
Ask about other symptoms and look for cause (infection, skin lesion, rash, bite):

Neck  
Check scalp, face, eyes, ears, nose, mouth and throat.

Axilla  
• Check arms, breasts, chest, upper abdomen and back.  
• If lump in breast →30.

Groin  
Is the groin lump hot and tender?

No

Check lower abdomen, legs, buttocks, genitals, anal region.

Yes

Treat patient and partner for **lymphogranuloma venereum**:

- First assess and advise the patient and partner →35.
- Give **doxycycline**<sup>1</sup> 100mg 12 hourly orally for 21 days.
- If fluctuant lymph node, aspirate pus through healthy skin in sterile manner every 3 days as needed.
- Review after 14 days. If no better, refer.

Has a cause been found?

No

- Test for HIV →77. If HIV positive, give routine care →78.
- Test for syphilis. If positive →41.
- If cough ≥ 2 weeks, weight loss, night sweats or fever ≥ 2 weeks, check for TB →72. Also aspirate lymph node for TB microscopy and cytology. If no TB found and symptoms persist, refer same week.
- Check full blood count. If abnormal, discuss with doctor.
- Review medication: atenolol, allopurinol, co-trimoxazole, antibiotics and phenytoin can cause lymphadenopathy. Discuss with doctor.
- If none of above, decide how to manage further.

Yes

- Manage as on symptom page.
- Reassure patient lymphadenopathy should resolve with treatment.
- If lymph node persists > 4 weeks, refer.

Localised lymphadenopathy and patient well

- Reassure patient.
- Advise to return if symptoms develop.
- If lymph node persists > 4 weeks, refer.

- Generalised lymphadenopathy or
- Patient unwell or
- Lymph node/s getting bigger quickly

Refer same week.

### How to aspirate lymph node for TB microscopy and cytology

- Clean skin over largest node with ethanol or povidone iodine. Hold node in fixed position with one hand so that it will not move.
- Insert 22 gauge needle into node, draw back plunger 2-3mL to create vacuum.
- Partially withdraw and reinsert needle at different angles several times through node (avoid withdrawing needle completely, maintain continuous vacuum).
- Release vacuum pressure before withdrawing needle completely.
- Remove syringe from needle, pull 2-3mL air into syringe, re-attach needle and gently spray contents of needle on to a glass slide.
- Lay another slide on top and pull the slides apart to spread the material.
- Allow one slide to air dry and fix other slide with cytology spray.
- If enough aspirate, also send for TB and bacterial culture and sensitivity.
- If aspirate unsuccessful or does not confirm a diagnosis, refer.

<sup>1</sup>If pregnant/breastfeeding, give instead **azithromycin** 1g weekly for 3 weeks.



# Weakness or tiredness

## Give urgent attention to the patient with weakness or tiredness and one or more of:

- If new sudden asymmetric weakness or numbness of face, arm or leg; difficulty speaking or visual disturbance: consider stroke or TIA →95.
- Chest pain →27
- Respiratory rate > 30 or difficulty breathing →28.
- Glucose < 4mmol/L: if known diabetes →90. If not, manage as below.
- Glucose > 11mmol/L: if known diabetes →90. If not →89
- Dehydration: thirst, dry mouth, poor skin turgor, sunken eyes, decreased urine output, drowsiness/confusion, BP < 90/60, pulse ≥ 100.
- Worsening weakness of leg/s
- If on abacavir or zidovudine, check for urgent side effects →82.

### Management:

- If dehydrated, give oral rehydration solution. If unable to drink or BP < 90/60, give sodium chloride 0.9% 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens. If IV rehydration needed or no better with oral rehydration after 2 hours, refer.
- If glucose < 4mmol/L or unable to measure, give oral glucose 20g. If unable to take orally, give instead 25mL glucose 50% IV over 1-3 minutes. Repeat if glucose still < 4mmol/L after 15 minutes. Continue glucose 5% 1L 6 hourly IV. If glucose still < 4mmol/L or weakness/tiredness persists, refer same day.
- If worsening weakness of leg/s, refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with weakness or tiredness not needing urgent attention

- Tiredness is a problem when it persists so that the patient is unable to complete routine tasks and it disrupts work, social and family life.
- Look for a cause of the patient's weakness/tiredness:

- If temperature ≥ 38°C →15. If < 38°C but had a fever in past 3 days and recently in a malaria area, exclude malaria →15.
- If cough, weight loss, night sweats or fever, exclude TB →72.
- Test for HIV →77. If HIV positive, give routine care →78.
- Exclude pregnancy. If pregnant →114.
- Assess and manage stress →67.
- If patient has difficulty sleeping →69.
- If patient has a life-limiting illness, also consider giving palliative care →122.

## If none of the above:

- If difficulty breathing worse on lying flat and leg swelling, heart failure likely →94.
- Exclude anaemia: check Hb. If < 12.5g/dL, discuss with doctor.
- Exclude diabetes: check glucose →89.
- Look for kidney disease: do urine dipstick. If patient has proteinuria on dipstick, diabetes, hypertension or is > 50 years, check eGFR.
- If weight gain, low mood, dry skin, constipation or cold intolerance, check TSH. If abnormal, refer to doctor.
- Review medication: loratadine, enalapril, amlodipine, metoprolol, fluoxetine, amitriptyline, metoclopramide, valproic acid, phenytoin and spironolactone can cause weakness or tiredness. Discuss with doctor.
- In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either →101.
- Screen for alcohol/drug use: in the past year, has patient: 1) drunk ≥ 4 drinks<sup>1</sup>/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any →105.

## If persistent weakness or tiredness and no obvious cause, refer.

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Collapse/falls

- If new sudden asymmetric weakness or numbness of face, arm or leg; difficulty speaking or visual disturbance: consider **stroke** or **TIA** →95

- Unconscious →11
- Fit →13
- Chest pain →27
- Difficulty breathing →28

## Management:

- If glucose < 4mmol/L or unable to measure, give **oral glucose** 20g. If unable to take orally, give instead 25mL **glucose 50%** IV over 1-3 minutes. Repeat if glucose still < 4mmol/L after 15 minutes. Continue **glucose 5%** 1L 6 hourly IV.
- If glucose > 11mmol/L →89.
- If **anaphylaxis** likely:
  - Raise legs and give face mask oxygen.
  - Give immediately **epinephrine** 0.5mL (1:1000 solution) IM into mid outer thigh. Repeat every 5-15 minutes if needed.
  - Give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 1-2L IV rapidly regardless of BP.
- If BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- Refer same day.

## Give urgent attention to the patient who has collapsed and one or more of:

- Recent injury
- Systolic BP < 90
- Pulse < 50 or irregular
- Palpitations
- Family history of collapse or sudden death
- Abnormal ECG
- Known heart problem
- Collapse with exercise
- Vomited blood or blood in stool
- Pregnant or missed/overdue period with abdominal pain and vaginal bleeding
- Severe back or abdominal pain
- Sudden diffuse rash or face/tongue swelling: **anaphylaxis** likely

## Approach to the patient who has collapsed not needing urgent attention

- Ensure patient has had an ECG. If abnormal, refer same day.
- Screen for alcohol/drug use: in the past year, has patient: 1) drunk ≥ 4 drinks<sup>1</sup>/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any →105
- Check for orthostatic hypotension: measure BP lying and repeat after standing for 3 minutes:

Systolic BP drops by ≥ 20 (or ≥ 30 if known hypertension) or diastolic BP drops by ≥ 10

- This is common in the elderly.
- If thirsty and pulse on standing ≥ 100, dehydration likely. Give **oral rehydration solution** and look for and manage cause.
- Check Hb: if < 12.5g/dL refer to doctor same week.
- Review medication: amitriptyline, amlodipine, enalapril, furosemide, glyceryl trinitrate, hydrochlorothiazide and metoprolol can cause syncope. Discuss with doctor.
- Advise patient to sit first before standing up from lying down.

Systolic BP does not drop by ≥ 20 (or ≥ 30 if known hypertension) *and* diastolic does not drop by ≥ 10  
Before the collapse did patient experience flushing, dizziness, nausea, sweating?

Yes

### Common faint likely

- May have had twitching of limbs that last < 15 seconds (not a fit).
- Advise to avoid overheating, prolonged standing and situations where fainting has occurred previously.
- Assess and manage stress →67.

No

Was collapse associated with a specific action (e.g. coughing, swallowing, head turning or passing urine)?

No

Is there known diabetes?

Yes

Give routine diabetes care →90.

No

Yes

Refer to specialist.

If cause for collapse is uncertain, refer.

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Dizziness

## Give urgent attention to the patient with dizziness (spinning/feeling of rotation of self or surroundings) and one or more of:

- If new sudden asymmetric weakness or numbness of face, arm or leg; difficulty speaking or visual disturbance: consider **stroke** or **TIA** →95.
- BP < 90/60
- Pulse < 50 or irregular
- Chest pain →27
- Difficulty breathing, especially on lying flat with leg swelling →94
- Recent head injury
- Unable to stand without support
- New sudden severe dizziness with nausea/vomiting, abnormal eye movements or walk

### Management:

- If BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- Refer same day.

## Approach to the patient with dizziness not needing urgent attention

- Ask about ear symptoms. If present →23. If hearing loss, refer same week.
- Ask about fainting/collapse attacks. If present, do ECG. If ECG abnormal, refer same day.
- Screen for alcohol/drug use: in the past year, has patient: 1) drunk ≥ 4 drinks<sup>1</sup>/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any →105.
- Review medication: antidepressants, hypertension and epilepsy treatment, furosemide and efavirenz can cause dizziness. Discuss with doctor.
- If diabetic, check glucose →90.
- Check Hb: if < 12.5g/dL, refer to doctor same week.
- Check BP: if > 140/90 →92. Assess for orthostatic hypotension: measure BP lying and repeat after standing for 3 minutes:

Systolic BP does not drop by ≥ 20 (or ≥ 30 if known hypertension) and diastolic BP does not drop by ≥ 10

Ask patient to breathe rapidly for 2 minutes. Are symptoms reproduced?

Yes

Systolic BP drops by ≥ 20 (or ≥ 30 if known hypertension) or diastolic BP drops by ≥ 10

### Orthostatic hypotension likely

- This is common in the elderly.
- If thirsty and pulse on standing ≥ 100, dehydration likely. Give **oral rehydration solution** and look for and manage cause.
- Advise patient to sit first before standing up from lying down.

### Hyperventilation likely

- Reassure and encourage patient to breathe at a normal rate.
- Assess and manage stress →67.

No

Ask about associated symptoms and length of dizziness. Is there hearing loss or tinnitus (ringing/buzzing in ear/s)?

No

Sudden dizziness lasts seconds, precipitated by head movements

### Positional vertigo likely

- Reassure patient that dizziness is self-limiting and usually resolves within 6 months.
- If no neck or heart problems, perform particle repositioning (Epley) manoeuvre.
- Refer if hearing loss, tinnitus, headaches or visual symptoms.

Sudden dizziness lasts hours/days with nausea/vomiting. May have preceding flu-like illness.

### Vestibular neuritis likely

- If nausea/vomiting, give **metoclopramide** 10mg 8 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- If no better after 2 weeks, hearing loss or tinnitus, refer.

Yes

Refer.

- If none of the above, check TSH. If abnormal, refer to doctor.
- Refer if no cause is found, dizziness persists despite above treatment or uncertain of diagnosis.

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Headache

## Give urgent attention to the patient with headache and one or more of:

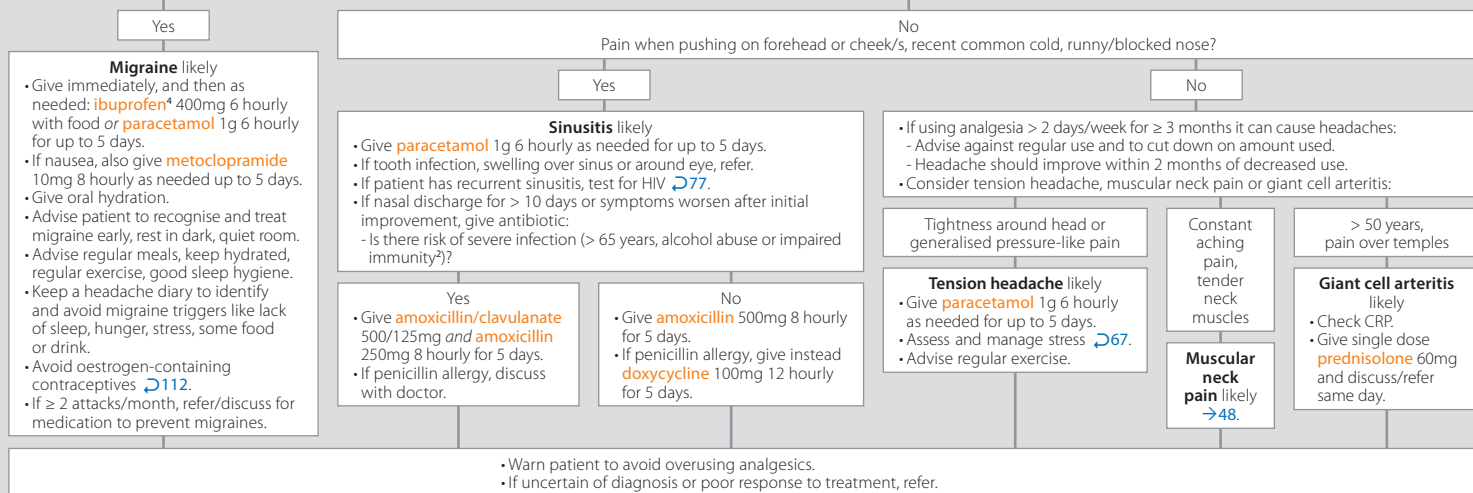
- Sudden severe headache
- New/different headache, or headache that is getting worse and more frequent
- Headache that wakes patient or is worse in the morning
- Temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$ , neck stiffness/meningism or vomiting
- Worsening/persistent headache in HIV patient recently started on ART
- BP  $\geq 180/110$  and not pregnant  $\rightarrow 92$
- Pregnant or up to 1 week post-partum, and BP  $\geq 140/90 \rightarrow 114$
- Decreased level of consciousness
- Confusion
- Sudden dizziness
- Vision problems (e.g. double vision) or eye pain  $\rightarrow 21$
- Following a first seizure
- Recent head trauma
- Sudden weakness or numbness of face, arm or leg  $\rightarrow 95$
- Speech disturbance
- Pupils different in size

### Management:

- If temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$  or neck stiffness/meningism, give **ceftriaxone**<sup>1</sup> 2g IV/IM and **vancomycin** 1g IV. If  $\geq 50$  years or impaired immunity<sup>2</sup>, also give **ampicillin**<sup>1</sup> 2g IV. If patient was in malaria area, and malaria test<sup>3</sup> positive, also give **artesunate** 2.4mg/kg IM.
- Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with headache not needing urgent attention

Is headache disabling and recurrent with nausea or light/noise sensitivity, that resolves completely?



<sup>1</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>Known with HIV, diabetes or cancer, pregnant or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids. <sup>3</sup>Test for malaria with parasite slide microscopy or if unavailable, rapid diagnostic test. <sup>4</sup>Avoid if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease.

# Eye/vision symptoms

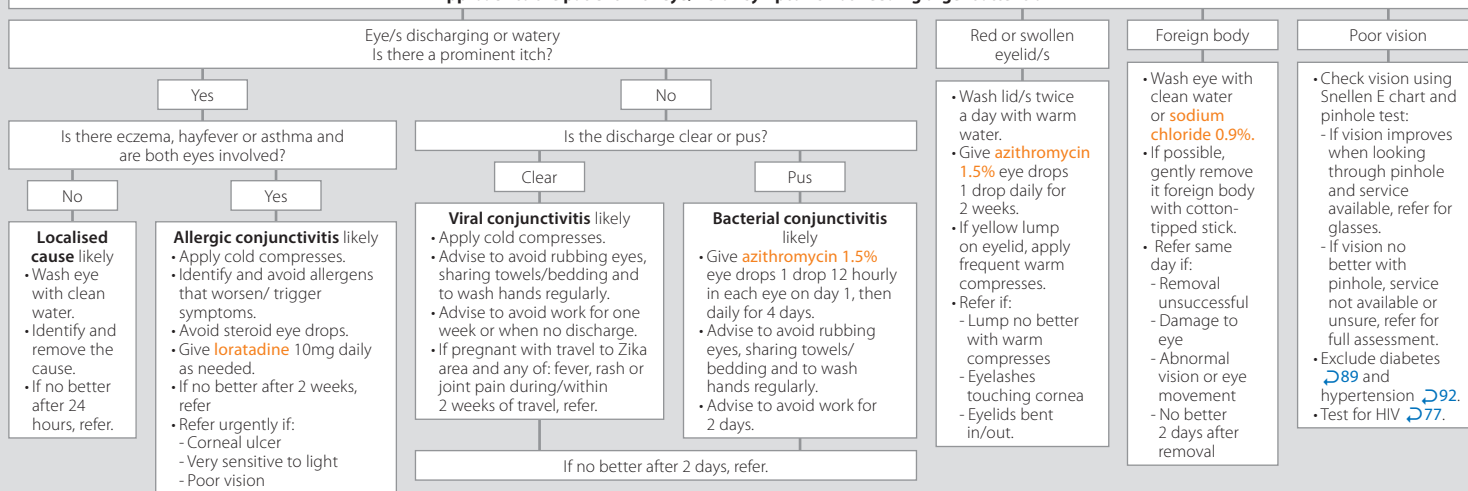
## Give urgent attention to the patient with eye/vision symptoms and one or more of:

- If new sudden asymmetric weakness or numbness of face, arm or leg; difficulty speaking or visual disturbance: consider **stroke** or **TIA** →95.
- BP  $\geq$  180/110 and not pregnant →92
- Pregnant or up to 1 week post-partum, and BP  $\geq$  140/90: manage as **severe pre-eclampsia** →114.
- Yellow eyes: **jaundice** likely →60.
- One painful red eye
- Sudden loss or change in vision (including blurred or reduced vision)
- Shingles involving eye or nose
- Whole eyelid swollen, red and painful: **orbital cellulitis** likely
- Penetrating injury
- Eyelid laceration
- Penetrating or metallic foreign body
- Chemical burn
- Corneal ulcer
- Hazy cornea
- Sudden drooping of eyelid

## Manage and refer urgently:

- If painful eye with redness, blurred vision, haloes around light, dilated unreactive pupil, headache or nausea/vomiting, **acute glaucoma** likely. Give **acetazolamide** 250mg orally and **timolol** 0.5% eye drops 1 drop in affected eye, followed 1 minute later by **pilocarpine** 2% eye drops 1 drop in affected eye.
- If **orbital cellulitis** likely, give **clindamycin** 600mg IV/IM.
- If chemical burn, wash eye/s continuously for at least 15 minutes with **sodium chloride** 0.9% or clean water.
- If penetrating or metallic foreign body, do not try to remove. Cover gently.

## Approach to the patient with eye/vision symptoms not needing urgent attention



# Face symptoms

## Give urgent attention to the patient with face symptoms and one or more of:

- If new sudden asymmetric weakness or numbness of face (with no/minimal forehead involvement), arm or leg; difficulty speaking or visual disturbance: consider **stroke** or **TIA** →95.
- Sudden face/tongue swelling with difficulty breathing, BP < 90/60 or collapse, **anaphylaxis** likely
- Painful red facial swelling and temperature ≥ 38°C: **facial cellulitis** likely
- New facial swelling with abnormal urine dipstick: **kidney disease** likely

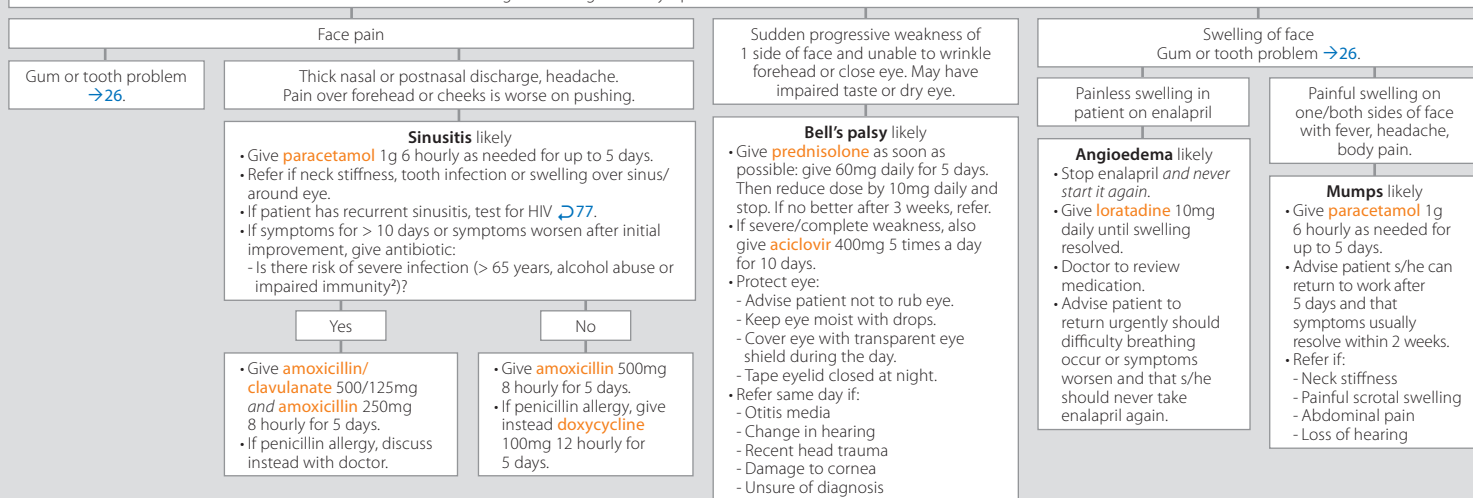
### Management:

#### • If anaphylaxis likely:

- Raise legs and give face mask oxygen.
- Give immediately **epinephrine** 0.5mL (1:1000 solution) IM into mid outer thigh. Repeat every 5-15 minutes if needed.
- Give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 1-2L IV rapidly regardless of BP. Then, if BP < 90/60, also give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with face symptoms not needing urgent attention

- If rash on face →53.
- Manage according to face symptom/s:

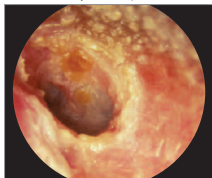


# Ear/hearing symptoms

Ask about itch, pain, discharge from ear and difficulty hearing/tinnitus (ringing/buzzing in ear/s)? Then look in ear.

## Itchy ear

Red swollen ear canal.  
May have pus.



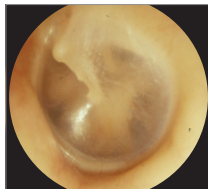
© University of Cape Town

### Otitis externa likely

- Clean ear<sup>1</sup>.
- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- Instil **ciprofloxacin 0.3%** drops 4 drops in ear 12 hourly for 7 days.
- If severe pain, temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$ , impaired immunity<sup>2</sup> or no response to ciprofloxacin drops, discuss/refer.

## Painful ear

Normal ear drum  
and canal



© University of Cape Town

### Referred pain likely

- Look for cause:
  - If gum or tooth problem → 26.
  - If throat problem → 25.
  - If pain in temporomandibular joint, check for joint problem → 46.
  - If painful swelling of one/both sides of face, **mumps** likely → 22.
- If uncertain of cause, discuss.

## Discharge from ear

Symptoms < 2 weeks; red or bulging eardrum. May have fever and/or difficulty hearing.



© University of Cape Town

### Acute otitis media likely

- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- If discharge, clean ear<sup>1</sup>.
- Give **amoxicillin** 500mg 8 hourly for 5 days. If penicillin allergy, give instead **erythromycin** 500mg 6 hourly for 5 days.
- Refer if:
  - No response to antibiotics after 5 days
  - Recurrent otitis media
- Refer urgently if:
  - Painful swelling behind ear
  - Neck stiffness

Symptoms  $\geq$  2 weeks; perforated eardrum. Painless, may have difficulty hearing



© University of Cape Town

### Chronic suppurative otitis media likely

- Clean ear<sup>1</sup> 3 times a day. The ear can heal only if dry.
- Instil **ciprofloxacin 0.3%** drops 4 drops in ear 12 hourly for 2 weeks.
- Refer if:
  - No better after 2 weeks
  - Foul-smelling discharge or yellow/white deposit on eardrum, **cholesteotoma** likely.
  - Large perforation
  - Hearing loss
  - Pain in ear
- Refer urgently if:
  - Painful swelling behind ear
  - Neck stiffness
- If poor response to treatment, check for TB → 272 and HIV → 277.

## Difficulty hearing or tinnitus

- If itchy/painful ear or discharge from ear, see adjacent.
- Check for wax:

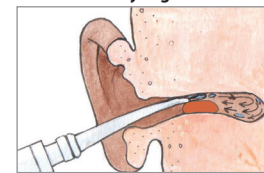
### Wax

- Instil **acetic acid 2%** 1 dropperful into ear and leave for 20 minutes.
- Then syringe ear with warm water. If unsuccessful after 3 attempts or causes pain, stop and refer.
- If hearing does not improve after wax removal, refer.

### No wax

- Arrange hearing test.
- Look for cause:
  - Ask about prolonged exposure to loud noise.
  - Review medication: aspirin, NSAIDs and furosemide.
- Refer if:
  - Sudden onset
  - One-sided
  - Dizziness/vertigo
  - Patient taking kanamycin

### How to syringe an ear



Fill a large syringe (50-200mL) with warm water. Ask patient to hold container under ear against neck to catch water. Gently pull ear upwards and backwards to straighten ear canal. Place tip of syringe at ear canal opening (no further than 8mm into canal) and direct water spray upwards in ear canal.

<sup>1</sup>Cleaning the ear (dry mopping): roll a piece of clean paper towel or absorbent cloth into a wick. Carefully insert wick into ear with twisting action. Remove wick and replace with clean dry wick. Repeat until wick is dry when removed. Never leave wick or other object inside the ear. <sup>2</sup>Known with HIV, diabetes or cancer or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids.

# Nose symptoms

**Give urgent attention to the patient with nose symptoms and:**  
 • Head trauma with clear watery discharge from nose  
**Refer urgently.**

## Approach to the patient with nose symptoms not needing urgent attention

Blocked/running nose or persistent snoring  
 Ask about duration and associated symptoms:

Bleeding nose

Sore throat or fever

Body aches/muscle pains or chills

No

Yes

**Common cold**  
likely

**Influenza (flu)**  
likely

- Advise on cough/sneeze hygiene and to wash hands regularly.
- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- Explain that antibiotics are not necessary.
- Advise patient to return if:
  - Symptoms persist > 7 days.
  - Initially better but fever returns and:
    - Productive cough →28.
    - Ear pain →23.
  - Pain over cheeks, **sinusitis** likely (see adjacent).
- Advise yearly influenza vaccination if ≥ 65 years, pregnant, HIV, chronic heart/lung disease.

Pain when pushing on forehead or cheek/s, headache, recent common cold

**Sinusitis** likely

- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- Refer if neck stiffness, tooth infection or swelling over sinus/around eye.
- If patient has recurrent sinusitis, test for HIV →77.
- If symptoms for > 10 days or symptoms worsen after initial improvement, give antibiotic:
  - Is there risk of severe infection (> 65 years, alcohol abuse or impaired immunity)?

Yes

No

- Give **amoxicillin/clavulanate** 500/125mg and **amoxicillin** 250mg 8 hourly for 5 days.
- If penicillin allergy, discuss instead with doctor.

- Give **amoxicillin** 500mg 8 hourly for 5 days.
- If penicillin allergy, give instead **doxycycline** 100mg 12 hourly for 5 days.

Recurrent sneezing or itchy nose most days for > 2 weeks. May have itchy eyes, ears or throat.

**Allergic rhinitis** likely

- Help patient to identify and advise to avoid triggers.
- Give **loratadine** 10mg daily for up to 5 days only when symptoms worsen.
- If symptoms occur on ≥ 4 days per week for > 1 month, give **beclometasone** nasal spray long term 100mcg (2 sprays) in each nostril daily. Once symptoms controlled, use lowest effective dose to maintain control.
- If no better and symptoms debilitating, discuss.

Persistent snoring or poor sleep

**Obstructive sleep apnoea** likely

- If continually itchy nose, consider allergic rhinitis (see adjacent).
- If overweight →87.
- Refer if:
  - Enlarged tonsils
  - Stops breathing, chokes or gasps while sleeping.

- Firmly pinch nostrils together for 10 minutes.
- Check BP:
  - If < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
  - If ≥ 140/90 →92.
- If still bleeding:
  - Insert cotton strips or swabs saturated with mixture of **lidocaine 4%** and **xylocetazoline 0.05%** into bleeding nostril/s for 15 minutes.
  - If bleeding persists, refer urgently.
- If recurrent bleeds:
  - Advise to apply petroleum jelly or use saline spray inside nostrils and avoid nose-picking or rubbing and contact sports.
  - If continually itchy nose, consider allergic rhinitis (see adjacent).
  - Advise patient to avoid aspirin and NSAIDs (e.g. ibuprofen) as they may prolong bleeding.
  - Educate how to firmly pinch nostrils together if bleeding occurs.
- If no better, discuss.

<sup>1</sup>Known with HIV, diabetes or cancer, pregnant or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids.



# Mouth and throat symptoms

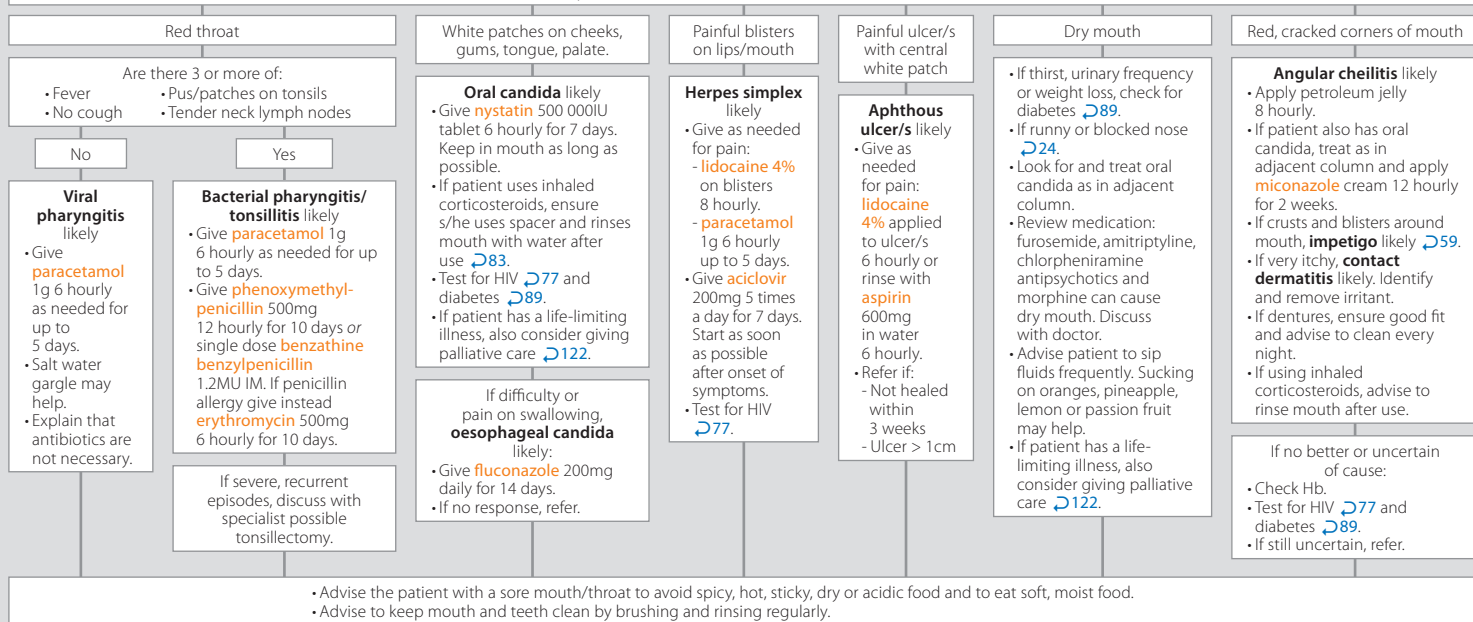
## Give urgent attention to the patient with mouth/throat symptoms and one or more of:

- Unable to open mouth
- Unable to swallow at all
- If on abacavir, check for urgent side effects [↪82](#).

Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with mouth/throat symptoms not needing urgent attention

- If gum or tooth problem [→26](#).
- Ask about dry mouth and swallowing problems. If food/liquid gets stuck with swallowing, refer.
- Look for redness, white patches, blisters, ulcers or cracks:



# Gum/teeth symptoms

## Give urgent attention to the patient with gum/teeth symptoms and one or more of:

- Temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$  and red/painful cheek
- Unable to eat or drink

Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with gum/teeth symptoms not needing urgent attention:

- Is there tooth pain/sensitivity, red/bleeding/enlarged gums or face/jaw swelling?
- Look in mouth: lift lip to look at teeth and gums:

Brown/black staining of teeth at gumline, holes, pits or missing teeth. May have tooth pain with hot or cold food/drink.



© BMJ Best Practice

### Dental caries likely

- Advise patient to care for his/her mouth (below).
- Refer to dentist.

Gums red/bleeding or enlarged



© BMJ Best Practice

### Gum problem likely

- Advise patient to care for his/her mouth (below).
- Review medication: phenytoin and amlodipine may cause gum overgrowth. Discuss with doctor.
- Rinse mouth with salt water mouthwash<sup>1</sup> for 1 minute twice a day.
- Rinse with **hydrogen peroxide 3%** mouthwash<sup>2</sup> four times a day for 7 days, after brushing teeth:
  - Avoid repeated use as can damage teeth.
  - Advise to avoid eating/drinking for 30 minutes after rinsing.
- Give as needed for pain **ibuprofen**<sup>3</sup> 400mg 6 hourly with food or **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly for up to 5 days.
- Refer to dentist if:
  - No better after 5 days
  - Foul-smelling breath
  - Temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$
  - Loss of gum or bone around tooth
  - Impaired immunity<sup>4</sup>

Previous/current tooth pain with pus in mouth, swelling next to tooth or on face/jaw



© BMJ Best Practice

### Dental abscess likely

- Give **ibuprofen**<sup>2</sup> 400mg 6 hourly or **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly for up to 5 days.
- Give **amoxicillin** 500mg and **metronidazole**<sup>5</sup> 500mg 8 hourly for 5 days. If penicillin allergy, give instead **clindamycin** 600mg on day 1, then 300mg 6 hourly for 5 days.
- Refer to dentist for tooth extraction.
- Advise to return and refer urgently if symptoms worsen, temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$  or no better after 2 days.
- Refer same day if > 65 years, alcohol/drug misuse or impaired immunity<sup>4</sup>.

## Advise the patient with gum/teeth symptoms to care for his/her mouth

- Advise a healthy diet [↗9](#).
- Advise to brush and floss teeth twice a day and, if available, to have dental check-up every 6 months.
- If dentures, advise to clean thoroughly every day. If poorly fitting dentures or discomfort, refer to dentist.
- Ask about smoking and substance use. If patient smokes tobacco [↗104](#). If alcohol or drug use [↗105](#).

<sup>1</sup>Mix ½ teaspoon salt in ½ cup lukewarm water. <sup>2</sup>Dilute 5mL hydrogen peroxide with 5mL water to make 10mL mouthwash. <sup>3</sup>Avoid if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease. <sup>4</sup>Known with diabetes, HIV, kidney/liver/heart disease or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids. <sup>5</sup>Advise no alcohol until 24 hours after metronidazole.

SYMPTOMS  
CONTENTS

CHRONIC  
CONDITIONS  
CONTENTS

GENERAL  
HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC  
RESPIRATORY  
DISEASE

CHRONIC  
DISEASES  
OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

MENTAL  
HEALTH

MUSCULO-  
SKELETAL  
DISORDERS

WOMEN'S  
HEALTH

PALLIATIVE  
CARE

# Chest pain

## Give urgent attention to the patient with chest pain and one or more of:

- Respiratory rate > 30 or difficulty breathing
- BP  $\geq$  180/110 or < 90/60
- Pulse irregular,  $\geq$  100 or < 50
- Severe pain
- New pain or discomfort in centre or left side of chest
- Pain radiates to neck, jaw, shoulder/s or arm/s
- Nausea or vomiting
- Pallor or sweating
- Known with ischaemic heart disease
- At risk of heart attack (diabetes, smoker, hypertension, high cholesterol, known CVD risk > 20%, family history)

Do an ECG.

ECG abnormal  
(ST elevation, ST depression or  
left bundle branch block)

ECG normal/other abnormalities or unavailable or uncertain

Is chest pain worse on lying down, palpation or breathing deeply?

No

Yes

→96

### Manage and refer urgently:

- If oxygen saturation < 90%, oxygen saturation machine not available, respiratory rate > 30 or difficulty breathing, give face mask oxygen.
- If sudden breathlessness, more resonant/decreased breath sounds/pain on one side, deviated trachea, **tension pneumothorax** likely:
  - Insert large bore cannula above 3rd rib in mid-clavicular line.
  - Arrange for urgent chest tube.
- If BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly. Repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- If BP  $\geq$  180/110, discuss with specialist the need for urgent treatment.
- If temperature  $\geq$  38°C, give **ceftriaxone<sup>1</sup>** 1g IV/IM.

## Approach to the patient with chest pain not needing urgent attention

- If recurrent episodes of central chest pain, brought on by exertion and relieved by rest, **ischaemic heart disease** likely →96.
- If cough, fever or pain on breathing deeply →28.
- Ask about site of pain and associated symptoms:

Retrosternal or epigastric pain with eating, hunger or lying down/bending forward

### Dyspepsia (heartburn) likely

- Advise to avoid caffeine and if heartburn at night, prop up head of bed and avoid eating late at night. Stop NSAIDs (e.g. ibuprofen), aspirin.
- Ask about smoking. If patient smokes tobacco →104. Support patient to change →127.
- If drinks alcohol  $\geq$  4 drinks<sup>2</sup>/session →105.
- If waist circumference > 80cm (woman) or 94cm (man), encourage weight loss and assess CVD risk →87.
- Give **omeprazole** 20mg daily for 4 weeks.
- Refer same week if any of: no better after 14 days of omeprazole, new onset pain and > 50 years, pain on swallowing, persistent vomiting, weight loss, loss of appetite, early fullness, blood in stool or occult blood positive or abdominal mass.

Tender at costochondral  
junction, no fever or cough

### Musculoskeletal problem likely

- Give **ibuprofen** 400mg 8 hourly with food up to 10 days (avoid if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease).
- If pain persists > 4 weeks, refer.

Burning pain on  
one side of body  
with or  
without rash

**Herpes zoster  
(shingles)** likely  
→54.

If uncertain of diagnosis, refer same week.

<sup>1</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Cough or difficulty breathing

- Give urgent attention to the patient with cough and/or difficulty breathing and one or more of:**
- If wheeze/tight chest and no rash or face/tongue swelling →29.
  - Difficulty breathing worse on lying flat and leg swelling: **heart failure** likely →94.
  - Rapid deep breathing with glucose > 11 mmol/L →89.
  - Sudden diffuse rash or face/tongue swelling
  - Breathless at rest or while talking
  - Respiratory rate > 30
  - Coughs ≥ 1 tablespoon fresh blood
  - Confused or agitated
  - BP < 90/60
  - Swelling and pain in one calf

## Manage and refer urgently:

- Give face mask oxygen (if known COPD give 24-28% face mask oxygen).

Temperature ≥ 38°C, **pneumonia** likely  
Give **ceftriaxone**<sup>1</sup> 1g IV/IM.

Sudden diffuse rash or face/tongue swelling, **anaphylaxis** likely

- Raise legs.
- Give immediately **epinephrine** 0.5mL (1:1000 solution) IM into mid outer thigh. Repeat every 5-15 minutes if needed.
- Give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 1-2L IV rapidly, regardless of BP.

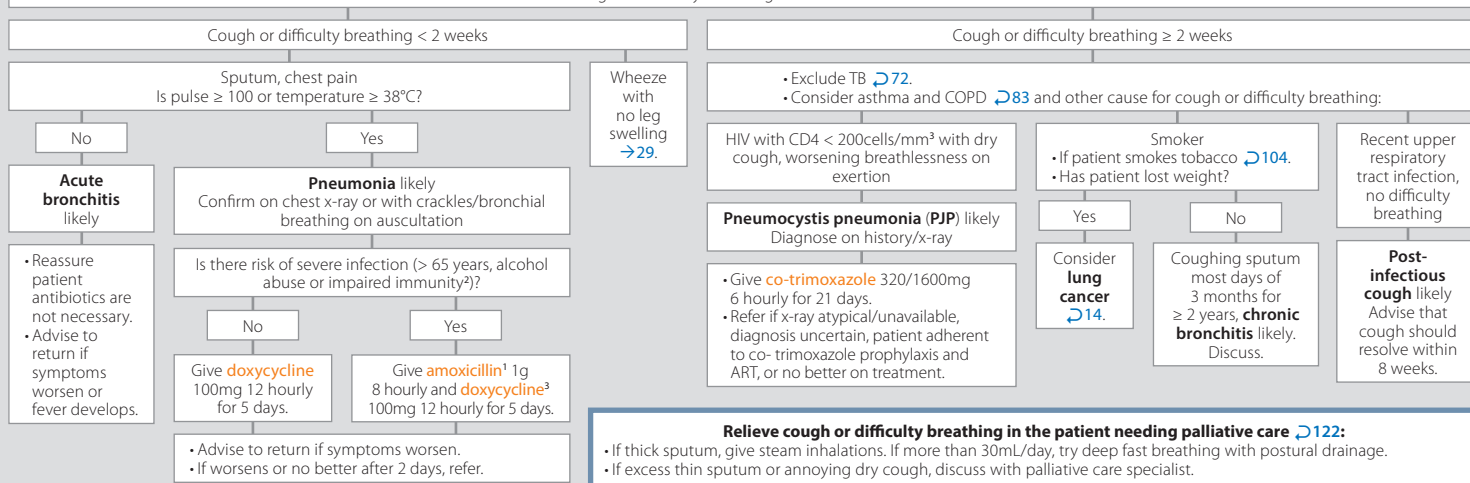
Sudden breathlessness, more resonant/decreased breath sounds/pain on one side, deviated trachea, **tension pneumothorax** likely

- Insert large bore cannula above 3rd rib in mid-clavicular line.
- Arrange urgent chest tube.

If BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.

## Approach to the patient with cough or difficulty breathing not needing urgent attention

- Test for HIV →77. If on abacavir, check for urgent side effects →82.
- Ask about duration of cough or difficulty breathing:



<sup>1</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>If pregnant, give instead **erythromycin** 500mg 6 hourly for 5 days. <sup>3</sup>Known with HIV, diabetes or cancer, pregnant or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids.

# Wheeze/tight chest

- If sudden diffuse rash or face/tongue swelling, **anaphylaxis** likely →28.
- If difficulty breathing worse on lying flat and leg swelling, **heart failure** likely →94.

## Give urgent attention to the patient with wheeze/tight chest:

Assess severity of episode:

Any of: respiratory rate > 30, pulse > 120, unable to talk in full sentences, using accessory muscles, silent chest (tight chest but no wheeze), agitated, drowsy or confused?

No

Mild or moderate

- Give inhaled **salbutamol** via spacer 400-800mcg (4-8 puffs) or nebulise 1mL **salbutamol 0.5% solution** in 4mL **sodium chloride 0.9%**. If no better, repeat salbutamol every 20 minutes during first hour.
- If known asthma or COPD, give **prednisolone** 40mg orally. If unable to take oral medication, give instead **hydrocortisone** 100mg IV.
- Give face mask oxygen between each dose of salbutamol (if known COPD, give 24-28% face mask oxygen).
- Monitor response regularly:

Improving or no change at 1 hour

Check respiratory rate. Can patient talk normally?

Able to talk normally *and* respiratory rate < 20

Wheeze/tight chest resolved

Wheeze/tight chest still present

- Repeat **salbutamol** hourly or as needed.
- Is wheeze/tight chest still present at 3 hours?

No

Yes

- If first episode of wheeze/tight chest, assess for asthma and COPD →83.
- If known asthma/COPD, give routine care: if asthma →85, if COPD →86.

Continue salbutamol and refer.

Unable to talk normally or respiratory rate > 20

- Refer urgently.
- While awaiting transport:
  - Give 1mL **salbutamol 0.5% solution** in 4mL **sodium chloride 0.9%** via nebuliser every 20 minutes (or continuously if needed). If nebuliser not available, use a spacer to give inhaled **salbutamol** 400-800mcg (4-8 puffs) every 20 minutes instead.
  - Give inhaled **ipratropium bromide** 80mcg (4 puffs) using a spacer every 20 minutes (or more often if needed).
  - Give face mask oxygen between nebulisations/doses (if known COPD, give 24-28% face mask oxygen).
  - Give **hydrocortisone** 100mg IV if not already given.

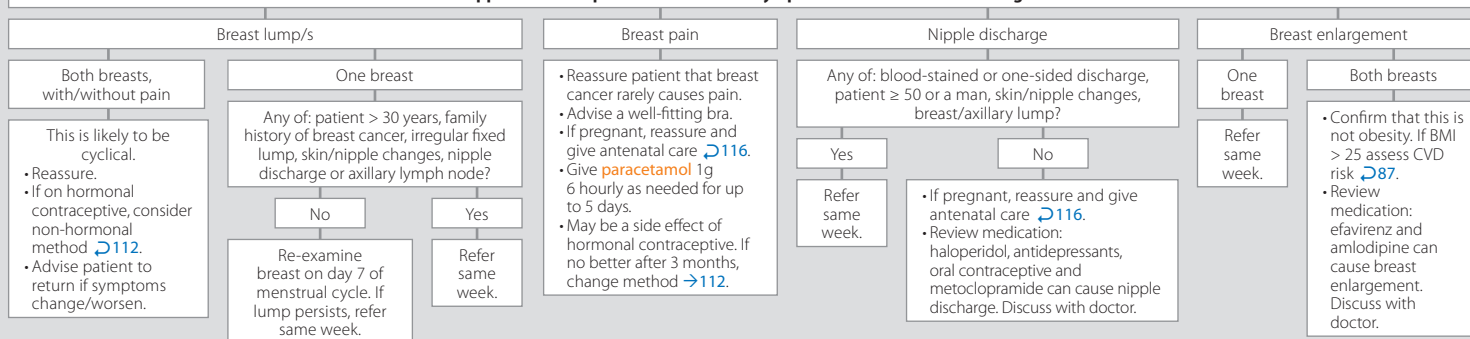
Worsening despite treatment

Yes

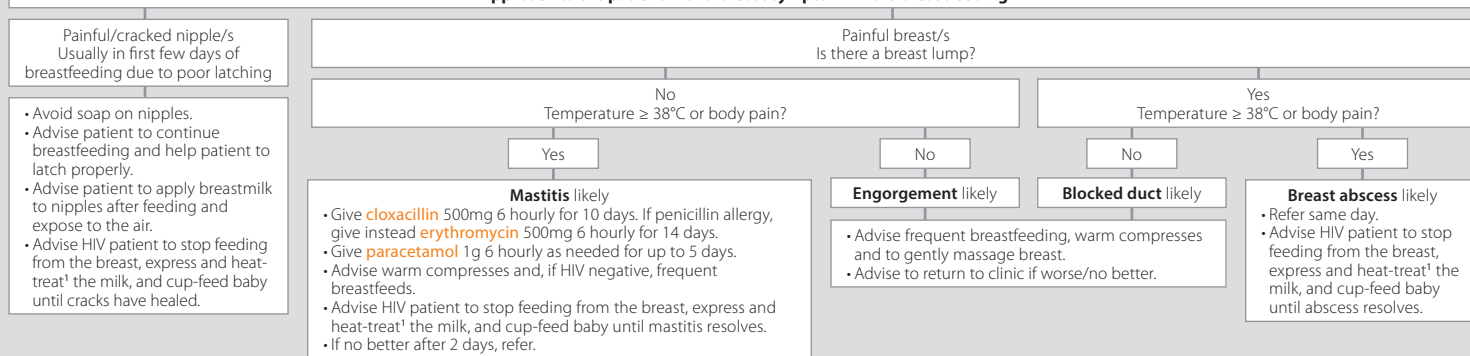
Severe

# Breast symptoms

## Approach to the patient with a breast symptom who is not breastfeeding



## Approach to the patient with a breast symptom who is breastfeeding



Ensure the breastfeeding HIV patient and her baby receive routine HIV care [↗78](#) and [↗118](#).

<sup>1</sup>Heat-treat milk to rid it of HIV and bacteria: place breastmilk in sterilized glass jar. Close lid and place in pot. Fill pot with water 2cm above milk and heat water. Remove jar when water is rapidly boiling.

# Abdominal pain (no diarrhoea)

## Give urgent attention to the patient with abdominal pain and one or more of:

- Unable to pass urine and distended abdomen →44
- Chest pain →27
- Pregnant or up to 1 week post-partum, and BP  $\geq$  140/90 →114
- Recent termination of pregnancy/miscarriage/delivery →118
- Pregnant and vaginal bleeding →114
- Sudden severe upper abdominal pain spreading to back with nausea/vomiting: **pancreatitis** likely
- Pulsatile abdominal mass: **abdominal aortic aneurysm** likely
- Peritonitis (guarding, rigidity or rebound tenderness)
- Jaundice
- Temperature  $\geq$  38°C
- No stool or flatus/wind for last 24 hours with/without vomiting
- If drowsiness, confusion, nausea/vomiting, rapid deep breathing: check glucose →89.
- If on ART, check for urgent side effects →82.

### Management:

- If **pancreatitis** likely, give **Ringer's lactate** 1L IV rapidly regardless of BP, then give 1L 4 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- If **abdominal aortic aneurysm** likely: avoid giving IV fluids even if BP < 90/60 (raising blood pressure may worsen rupture).
- Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with abdominal pain not needing urgent attention

- If sexually active woman with lower abdominal pain and abnormal vaginal discharge →37.
- If the patient has urinary symptoms →44.
- If the patient is constipated →34.

Does patient have epigastric pain which is worse with eating, hunger or lying down/bending forward?

Yes

### Dyspepsia (heartburn) likely

- Advise to avoid caffeine and if heartburn at night, prop up head of bed and avoid eating late at night.
- Stop NSAIDs (e.g. ibuprofen), aspirin.
- Ask about smoking. If patient smokes tobacco →104. Support patient to change →127.
- If drinks alcohol  $\geq$  4 drinks/session →105.
- If waist circumference > 80cm (woman) or 94cm (man), encourage weight loss and assess CVD risk →87.
- Give **omeprazole** 20mg daily for 4 weeks.
- Refer same week if any of: no better after 14 days of omeprazole, new onset pain and > 50 years, pain on swallowing, persistent vomiting, weight loss, loss of appetite, early fullness, blood in stool or occult blood positive, abdominal mass or uncertain of diagnosis.

No

Has patient lost weight?

Yes

Does patient have any of: cough, night sweats, fever or HIV?

Yes

Exclude TB →72.

No

Consider **cancer**. Refer same week.

No

Does the patient report worms?

Yes

- Tapeworm or worm segments: give single dose **praziquantel** 10mg/kg.
- Other worm or unsure: give single dose **albendazole** 400mg.
- Educate on personal hygiene and avoid undercooked meat.
- Treat family members at same time.

No

If pain is recurrent and relieved when passing stool, with constipation and/or diarrhoea and bloating, **irritable bowel syndrome** likely. Refer to doctor.

- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- Review regularly until pain resolves or a cause is found.

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Nausea or vomiting

## Give urgent attention to the patient with nausea or vomiting and one or more of:

- Headache →20
- Chest pain →27
- Sudden severe upper abdominal pain spreading to back: **pancreatitis** likely
- Dehydration: thirst, dry mouth, poor skin turgor, sunken eyes, decreased urine output, drowsiness/confusion, BP < 90/60, pulse ≥ 100
- Peritonitis (guarding, rigidity or rebound tenderness)
- Vomiting blood
- Jaundice
- Abdominal pain/distention and no stools or flatus/wind
- If drowsiness, confusion, abdominal pain, rapid deep breathing: check glucose →89.
- If on ART, check for urgent side effects →82.

### Management:

- If **pancreatitis** likely, give **Ringer's lactate** 1L IV rapidly regardless of BP, then give 1L 4 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- If dehydrated, give **oral rehydration solution**. If unable to drink or BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens. If IV rehydration needed or no better with oral rehydration after 2 hours, refer.
- Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with nausea or vomiting not needing urgent attention

- Exclude pregnancy. If pregnant, reassure that nausea/vomiting is common in first trimester. Encourage to eat smaller meals more frequently and drink lots of fluids. Give routine antenatal care →114.
- If associated dizziness →19.
- Review medication: NSAIDs (e.g. ibuprofen), metformin, contraceptives, hormone therapy, theophylline, chemotherapy and morphine can cause nausea/vomiting. Discuss with doctor. If on TB medication →75 or ART →82.
- Screen for alcohol/drug use: in the past year, has patient: 1) drunk ≥ 4 drinks/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any →105.
- If patient has a life-limiting illness, also consider giving palliative care →122.

Does patient have epigastric pain which is worse with eating, hunger or lying down/bending forward?

Yes

### Dyspepsia (heartburn) likely

- Advise to avoid caffeine and if heartburn at night, prop up head of bed and avoid eating late at night.
- Stop NSAIDs (e.g. ibuprofen), aspirin.
- Ask about smoking. If patient smokes tobacco →104. Support patient to change →127.
- If waist circumference > 80cm (woman) or 94cm (man), encourage weight loss and assess CVD risk →87.
- Give **omeprazole** 20mg daily for 4 weeks.
- Refer same week if any of: no better after 14 days of omeprazole, new onset pain and > 50 years, pain on swallowing, persistent vomiting, weight loss, loss of appetite, early fullness, blood in stool or occult blood positive, abdominal mass or uncertain of diagnosis.

No

- If new onset vomiting, usually with diarrhoea, cramping abdominal pain, loss of appetite, body pains and weakness, reassure patient that vomiting/diarrhoea is likely due to a viral infection or food poisoning and should resolve within 1-3 days.
- Give **metoclopramide** 10mg 8 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- If vomiting/diarrhoea, give **oral rehydration solution**.
- Advise patient to drink lots of fluids, eat small frequent meals as able and avoid fatty food.
- Advise patient to return if vomiting > 3 days, not tolerating oral fluids or needing urgent attention as above: refer same day.
- If nausea persists > 2 weeks or uncertain of cause, discuss.

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.



# Diarrhoea

## Give urgent attention to the patient with diarrhoea and one or more of:

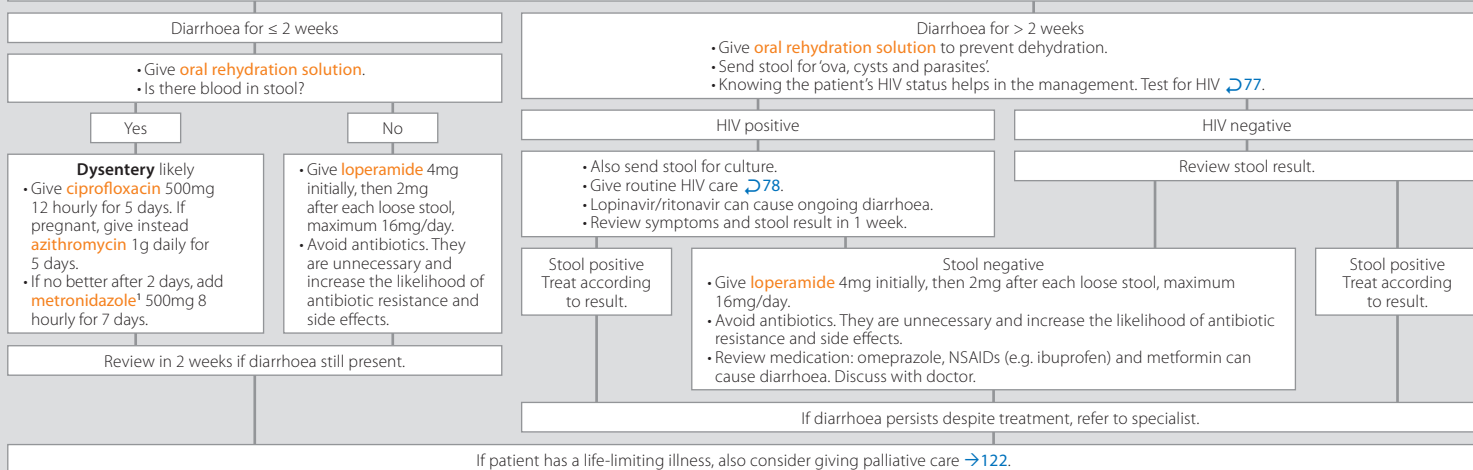
- Dehydration: thirst, dry mouth, poor skin turgor, sunken eyes, decreased urine output, drowsiness/confusion, BP < 90/60, pulse ≥ 100
- If on abacavir or zidovudine, check for urgent side effects →82.

### Management:

- Give **oral rehydration solution**. If unable to drink or BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- If IV rehydration needed or no better with oral rehydration after 2 hours, refer same day.

## Approach to the patient with diarrhoea not needing urgent attention

- Confirm patient has diarrhoea: watery stools and/or > 3 stools/day.
- If > 65 years, bed-bound or receiving palliative care, check for faecal impaction (solid immobile bulk of stool in rectum). If impacted, gently remove stool from rectum using lubrication. Follow with **mineral oil** enema. If bleeding or severe pain, stop and refer.
- Advise patient to increase fluid and salt intake, eat small frequent meals when able and avoid sweet/caffeinated drinks.
- Ask about duration of diarrhoea:



# Constipation

## Give urgent attention to the patient with constipation and:

- No stools or flatus/wind in the last 24 hours with abdominal pain/distention and vomiting

### Management:

- Refer same day.

## Approach to the patient with constipation not needing urgent attention

- Review diet, fluid intake and medication (amitriptyline, schizophrenia treatment, codeine and morphine can cause constipation: discuss with doctor). Ask about regular use of enemas or laxatives.
- Exclude pregnancy. If pregnant → 114.
- If weakness/tiredness, weight gain, low mood, dry skin or cold intolerance, check TSH. If abnormal, refer to doctor.
- If patient is bed-bound or has a life-limiting illness, also consider giving palliative care → 122.
- If > 65 years, bed-bound or receiving palliative care, check for impaction (solid immobile bulk of stool in rectum). If impacted, gently remove stool from rectum using lubrication. Follow with **mineral oil** enema. If bleeding or severe pain, stop and refer.
- Advise a high fibre diet (vegetables, fruit, wholemeal cereals, bran and cooked dried prunes), adequate fluid intake and at least 30 minutes moderate exercise (e.g. brisk walking) most days of the week.
- If no better with diet and exercise, give **docusate sodium** 100mg 12 hourly as needed for 3-5 days.
- If on codeine/morphine, also give **senna** 15mg 12 hourly.
- If no response after 1 week of laxative use, recent change in bowel habits, weight loss, blood in stool or occult blood positive, or uncertain cause for constipation, refer.

# Anal symptoms

## Give urgent attention to the patient with anal symptoms and one or more of:

- Extremely painful lump on anus
- Unable to pass stool because of anal symptoms

### Management:

- Refer same day.

Assess patient with anal pain, bleeding, discharge or itch/irritation.

If patient has anal sex, also ask about genital symptoms → 35. Then examine anal area to look for cause:

Crack/s	Lump/pile	Ulcer/s	Perianal warts	Red/raw skin	Suspected worms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Advise as for constipation above and to take sitz baths.</li> <li>• If constipated, give <b>docusate sodium</b> as above.</li> <li>• Apply <b>lidocaine 2%</b> gel after each bowel action.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Advise as for constipation above and to avoid straining.</li> <li>• Apply <b>hydrocortisone 1%</b> cream 12 hourly for 5 days.</li> </ul>	Treat as for genital ulcer → 38.	Treat as for genital warts → 39.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Advise good hygiene.</li> <li>• Look for contact cause. If diarrhoea → 33.</li> <li>• Apply petroleum jelly to raw areas. If severe itching, also apply <b>hydrocortisone 1%</b> cream 12 hourly for 5 days.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Give single dose <b>mebendazole</b> 100mg and repeat dose 14 days later. If pregnant, give instead <b>pyrantel</b> 11mg/kg and repeat dose 14 days later.</li> <li>• Educate on personal hygiene and avoid undercooked meat.</li> <li>• Treat family members at same time.</li> </ul>
If no better with treatment, refer.					

# Genital symptoms

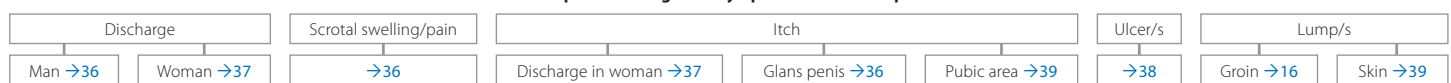
## Assess the patient with genital symptoms and his/her partner/s

Assess	Note
Symptoms	Ask about genital discharge, rash, itch, lumps, ulcers and manage as below. Manage other symptoms as on symptom pages.
Sexual health	Ask about sexual orientation, risky behaviour (patient or partner has new or > 1 partner, unreliable condom use or risky alcohol/drug use <a href="#">↗105</a> ) and sexual problems <a href="#">↗43</a> .
Abuse	Ask about sexual assault. If yes <a href="#">↗68</a> .
Family planning	Assess patient's contraception needs <a href="#">↗112</a> and discuss infertility. Exclude pregnancy. If pregnant <a href="#">↗114</a> .
Examination	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Woman: examine abdomen for masses, look for discharge, ulcers, rash, lumps. Do bimanual palpation for cervical tenderness or pelvic masses and speculum examination for cervical abnormalities.</li> <li>Man: look for discharge, inguinal lymph nodes, ulcers, scrotal swelling or masses.</li> </ul>
HIV	Test for HIV <a href="#">↗77</a> .
Syphilis	Test for syphilis if patient has an STI, is pregnant, was raped or whose partner has an STI or is syphilis positive. If positive <a href="#">↗41</a> .
Cervical screen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do cervical screen <a href="#">↗40</a>.</li> <li>If abnormal vaginal discharge, treat discharge first before screening <a href="#">↗37</a>.</li> </ul>

## Advise the patient with genital symptoms and his/her partner/s

- Discuss safe sex: provide male and female condoms, advise patient to stick to one partner at a time. Offer referral for medical male circumcision.
- If patient has a sexually transmitted infection (STI):
  - Educate patient about cause and that an STI increases risk of HIV transmission. Urge patient to adhere to treatment and abstain from sex for at least 1 week after treatment.
  - Stress importance of partner treatment and issue partner notification slip with the patient's diagnosis for each partner.

## Treat the patient with genital symptoms and his/her partner/s



Patient's diagnosis	Treat the patient's partner/s according to the patient's diagnosis as well as the partners' symptoms (if any)
Cervicitis	Give partner single dose each of <b>ceftriaxone</b> <sup>1</sup> 250mg IM and <b>azithromycin</b> 1g orally.
Pelvic inflammatory disease	Give partner single dose each of <b>ceftriaxone</b> <sup>1</sup> 250mg IM and <b>azithromycin</b> 1g orally.
Male urethritis	Give partner single dose each of <b>ceftriaxone</b> <sup>1</sup> 250mg IM and <b>azithromycin</b> 1g orally.
Epididymitis/epididymo-orchitis	Give partner single dose each of <b>ceftriaxone</b> <sup>1</sup> 250mg IM and <b>azithromycin</b> 1g orally.
Genital ulcer	Give partner single dose each of <b>benzathine benzylpenicillin</b> 2.4MU IM and <b>azithromycin</b> 1g orally. If penicillin allergy, manage instead <a href="#">↗38</a> .
RPR positive	Give partner single dose <b>benzathine benzylpenicillin</b> 2.4MU IM. If penicillin allergy, manage instead <a href="#">↗41</a> .
Balanitis/balanoposthitis	Give female partner single dose <b>clotrimazole</b> vaginal tablet 500mg or <b>clotrimazole 1%</b> vaginal cream applied once at night for 7 days.
Pubic lice	Give partner <b>permethrin 1%</b> <a href="#">↗40</a> .
Lymphogranuloma venereum	Give partner single dose <b>azithromycin</b> 1g orally.

<sup>1</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), omit ceftriaxone and increase **azithromycin** dose to 2g orally.

# Genital symptoms in a man

## Give urgent attention to the man with genital symptoms and one or more of:

- Scrotal swelling/pain with any of: sudden severe pain, affected testicle higher/rotated, preceding trauma/strenuous activity: **torsion of testicle** likely
- Foreskin retracted over glans and unable to be reduced with swollen and very painful glans: **paraphimosis** likely
- Prolonged erection > 4 hours: **priapism** likely

### Management:

- If **torsion of testicle** or **priapism** likely: refer urgently.
- If **paraphimosis** likely:
  - If glans blue/black: refer urgently.
  - If not, attempt manual reduction: apply **lidocaine 2%** gel to glans, then wrap glans in gauze. Apply increasing pressure for 10-15 minutes until foreskin can be replaced over glans. If unsuccessful, refer urgently.

## Approach to the man with genital symptoms not needing urgent attention

First assess and advise the patient and his partner/s [↪35](#).

Urethral discharge or dysuria/burning urine



© University of Cape Town

### Male urethritis likely

- Give single dose **ceftriaxone** 250mg IM *and*
- Single dose **azithromycin** 1g orally
- If severe penicillin allergy<sup>1</sup>, omit ceftriaxone and increase **azithromycin** dose to 2g.
- If partner has cervicitis/vaginitis, also give single dose **metronidazole**<sup>2</sup> 2g orally.
- Treat patient's partner/s [↪35](#).

Advise patient to return in 7 days if symptoms persist:

- If not adherent or was re-exposed, repeat treatment.
- If fully adherent and no re-exposure:
  - Give single dose **ceftriaxone** 250mg IM *and*
  - Single dose **azithromycin** 2g orally *and*
  - Single dose **metronidazole**<sup>2</sup> 2g orally (if not already given).
  - If severe penicillin allergy<sup>1</sup>, omit ceftriaxone and discuss/refer.

Scrotal pain or swelling



© University of Cape Town

Pain with/without swelling or discharge

### Epididymitis/epididymo-orchitis likely

- Give single dose **ceftriaxone** 250mg IM *and* **doxycycline** 100mg 12 hourly for 14 days.
- If severe penicillin allergy<sup>1</sup>, omit ceftriaxone and give **azithromycin** 2g orally.
- Treat patient's partner/s [↪35](#).
- For pain, give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days. If no response, also give **ibuprofen** 400mg 8 hourly with food for up to 5 days (avoid if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease).
- If no better after 7 days, refer.

Painless lump

**Testicular cancer** likely

Refer.

Painful, itchy or smelly glans



© University of Cape Town

### Balanitis/balanoposthitis likely

- Advise patient to wash daily with water, avoid soap. Retract foreskin while washing then dry fully.
- Give **clotrimazole** cream 12 hourly for 7 days.
- Offer referral for medical male circumcision, especially if persistent/recurrent or difficulty retracting foreskin.
- Treat patient's partner/s [↪35](#).
- Advise patient to return in 7 days if symptoms persist:
  - If adherence poor, repeat treatment.
  - Test for diabetes [↪89](#) and HIV [↪77](#).
- If still no better, refer.

<sup>1</sup>Penicillin allergy with angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria. <sup>2</sup>Advise no alcohol until 24 hours after metronidazole.

# Vaginal discharge

- It is normal for a woman to have a vaginal discharge. Abnormal discharges are itchy or different in colour or smell. Not all women with a discharge have an STI.
- First assess and advise the patient and her partner/s [↪35](#).

- If the vulva is red, scratched and inflamed or curd-like discharge, **vaginal candida** likely:
- Give single dose **clotrimazole** vaginal tablet 500mg inserted at night or single dose **fluconazole** 150mg orally.
  - If severe, give instead single dose **fluconazole** 150mg orally and repeat after 3 days.

Is there lower abdominal pain or cervical tenderness?

No

Treat for **vaginitis**:

- Give **metronidazole**<sup>1</sup> 500mg orally 12 hourly for 7 days.
- If recurrent vaginitis, also give partner single dose **metronidazole**<sup>1</sup> 2g orally.

Does patient have any of: < 25 years, > 1 partner, new partner, unprotected sex in last 3 months or partner/s with STI?

No

Also treat for  **cervicitis**:

- Give single dose **ceftriaxone** 250mg IM *and*
- Single dose **azithromycin** 1g orally
- If severe penicillin allergy<sup>2</sup>, omit ceftriaxone and increase **azithromycin** to 2g.
- Treat the patient's partner/s [↪35](#).

Review in 7 days:

- If ongoing discharge: examine cervix for cancer and do cervical screen [↪40](#).
- If ongoing vaginal candida also test for diabetes [↪89](#) and HIV [↪77](#).
- Refer same week.

Yes

**Give urgent attention to the patient with vaginal discharge and lower abdominal pain/cervical tenderness and any of:**

- Recent miscarriage/delivery/termination of pregnancy
- Pregnant or missed/overdue period
- Peritonitis (guarding, rigidity or rebound tenderness)
- Abnormal vaginal bleeding
- Temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$
- Abdominal mass

**Management:**

- If BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- Give **ceftriaxone** 1g IV and **metronidazole**<sup>1</sup> 400mg orally. If severe penicillin allergy<sup>2</sup>, omit ceftriaxone and discuss with doctor.
- Refer same day.

**Approach to the patient with lower abdominal pain or cervical tenderness not needing urgent attention:**

Cervical tenderness with or without lower abdominal pain

Lower abdominal pain only, no cervical tenderness

Check urine dipstick. If nitrites positive, **urinary tract infection** likely [↪44](#).  
If nitrites negative, treat below.

**Pelvic inflammatory disease** likely

- Give single dose **ceftriaxone** 250mg IM (if severe penicillin allergy<sup>2</sup>, omit ceftriaxone and discuss) *and*
- Give **doxycycline** 100mg orally 12 hourly for 14 days *and*
- Give **metronidazole**<sup>1</sup> 500mg orally 12 hourly for 14 days.
- For pain, give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days. If no response, also give **ibuprofen** 400mg 8 hourly with food for up to 5 days (avoid ibuprofen if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease).
- Treat the patient's partner/s [↪35](#).
- Review within 2 days. If no better, refer same day.

<sup>1</sup>Advise no alcohol until 24 hours after last dose of metronidazole. <sup>2</sup>Penicillin allergy with angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria.

# Genital ulcer

- First assess and advise the patient and his/her partner/s [D35](#).
- The patient may have blister/s, sore, ulcer or swollen inguinal (groin) lymph nodes that might be tender or fluctuant with/without a vaginal/urethral discharge.

## Treat for herpes:

- Start as soon as possible after onset of symptoms:
  - If first episode, give **aciclovir** 400mg 8 hourly for 10 days.
  - If recurrent episode, give **aciclovir** 400mg 8 hourly for 5 days. If impaired immunity<sup>1</sup>, give **aciclovir** 400mg 8 hourly for 10 days.
- For pain:
  - Advise sitz baths as needed (sit for 10 minutes in lukewarm water with no salts).
  - Give **lidocaine 2%** gel applied topically to lesions 8 hourly as needed.
  - Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days. If no response, also give **ibuprofen** 400mg 8 hourly with food for up to 5 days (avoid ibuprofen if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease).
- Keep lesions clean and dry.
- Explain that herpes infection is lifelong and that herpes transmission can occur even when asymptomatic. Advise patient to use condoms and to abstain from sex when symptomatic. The likelihood of HIV transmission is increased when there are ulcers.
- If recurrent episodes are severe or > 6 in 1 year or cause distress, doctor to give **aciclovir** 400mg 12 hourly. Stop after 12 months. If no better, refer.



© University of Cape Town

## Also treat for **early syphilis** and **chancroid**:

- Give single dose **benzathine benzylpenicillin** 2.4MU IM and single dose **azithromycin** 1g orally.
- If penicillin allergy and not pregnant/breastfeeding, omit benzylpenicillin, do baseline RPR and give instead **doxycycline** 100mg 12 hourly orally for 14 days. If penicillin allergy and pregnant/breastfeeding, refer to confirm diagnosis and for possible penicillin desensitisation. Advise patient to return for repeat RPR in 6 and 12 months. If RPR at 12 months is not at least 4 times lower, refer.
- If vaginal/urethral discharge, also treat patient and partner/s for **gonorrhoea** (chlamydia already covered for above): give single dose **ceftriaxone**<sup>2</sup> 250mg IM.

Check if patient also has hot tender swollen inguinal nodes (discrete, movable and rubbery).

No

If no better after 7 days, refer.

Yes

## Also treat patient and partner/s for **lymphogranuloma venereum**:

- Give **doxycycline** 100mg 12 hourly orally for 21 days. If pregnant/breastfeeding, give instead **azithromycin** 1g weekly for 3 weeks.
- If fluctuant lymph node (hernia and aneurysm excluded), aspirate pus through healthy skin in sterile manner every 3 days as needed.
- Review after 14 days. If no better, refer.



© University of Cape Town

<sup>1</sup>Known with HIV or lymphoma, pregnant or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids. <sup>2</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor.

# Other genital symptoms

First assess and advise patient and partner/s [D35](#).

Lump/s



© University of Cape Town

## Genital warts

- Test for syphilis. If positive [D41](#).
- Protect surrounding skin with petroleum jelly and apply **podophyllum 15%** (avoid applying internally). Wash off after 4 hours. Repeat weekly for 6 weeks.
- Do cervical screen.
- Refer if:
  - Warts > 1cm
  - Multiple troublesome lesions
  - Warts in vagina or on cervix
  - Pregnant
- Reassure patient that most warts resolve spontaneously within 2 years.

## Molluscum contagiosum

- Papules with central dent
- Usually self-limiting and no treatment required.
- If HIV positive, should resolve with ART.
- If no response to treatment, refer.

## Pubic lice

Treat patient and partner/s:

- Apply **permethrin 1%** lotion to affected areas and adjacent hairy areas. Rinse off after 10 minutes. Avoid mucous membranes, urethral opening and raw areas. Repeat after 9 days.
- Wash clothes and linen used in past 2 days in very hot water.
- For itch, give **loratadine 10mg** daily as needed.

Itchy rash in pubic area



© BMJ Best Practice

## Scabies

Treat patient, partner/s and household contacts:

- Apply **permethrin 5%** from the neck down. Wash off after 14 hours. Avoid mucous membranes, urethral opening and raw areas.
- Repeat after 10 days if needed.
- Wash and iron clothes and linen.
- For itch, give **loratadine 10mg** daily as needed.

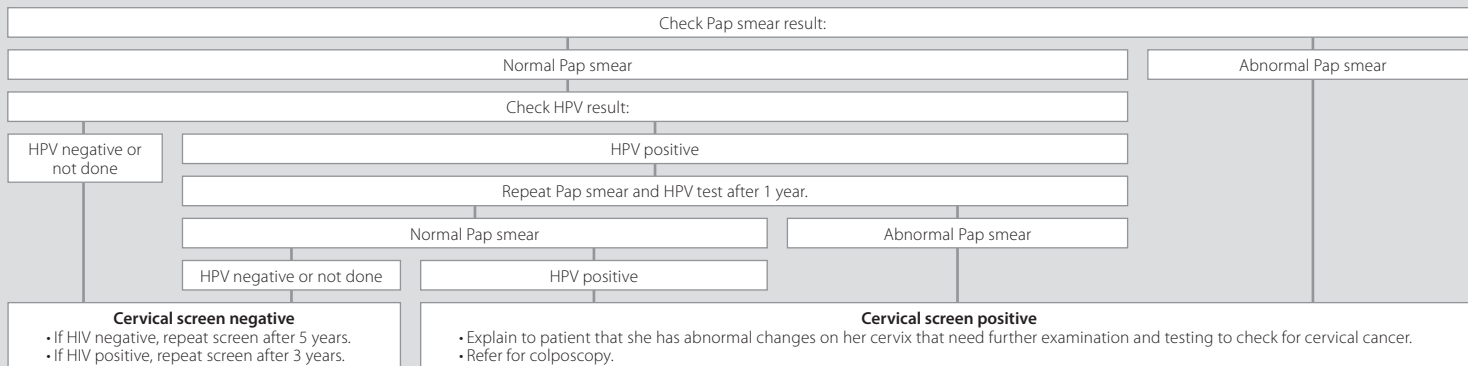
# Cervical screening

## A woman who has ever been sexually active needs cervical screening if she is:

- HIV negative: age > 30 years and had no cervical screening in past 5 years
- HIV positive: any age and had no cervical screening in past 3 years

### Assess the patient needing cervical screening

Assess	Note
Symptoms	Ask about abnormal vaginal bleeding ↗42, vaginal discharge ↗37 and manage as on symptom pages. If abnormal vaginal discharge, treat discharge first before screening.
Family planning	Assess patient's contraception needs ↗112.
Examination	Do bimanual palpation for cervical tenderness or pelvic masses and speculum examination for cervical abnormalities. If cervix suspicious of cancer, refer for urgent colposcopy.
HIV	Test for HIV ↗77. If HIV positive, give routine HIV care ↗78, and start cervical screening at diagnosis then repeat 3 yearly.
Pap smear	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If Pap smear unsatisfactory, repeat within 3 months.</li> <li>• If Pap smear satisfactory, interpret result and decide frequency below.</li> </ul>
Human papillomavirus (HPV) test	If > 30 years, also collect sample from cervix for HPV while doing Pap smear.



### Advise the patient needing cervical screening

- Cervical cancer is a disease that affects the mouth of the womb. Advise patient that cervical screening is an effective way to prevent cervical cancer.
- Educate that certain types of HPV cause cervical cancer. HPV is transmitted sexually and sometimes persists for years causing changes on the cervix that may become cancer.
- Explain that a Pap smear can detect changes on the cervix that occur many years before cancer develops. Colposcopy is a closer examination of the cervix to confirm and test these abnormal changes.
- Advise that smoking increases the risk of cervical abnormalities. If patient smokes tobacco ↗104. Support patient to change ↗127.
- Advise patient to return if symptoms of cervical cancer (abnormal vaginal bleeding, vaginal discharge) occur.

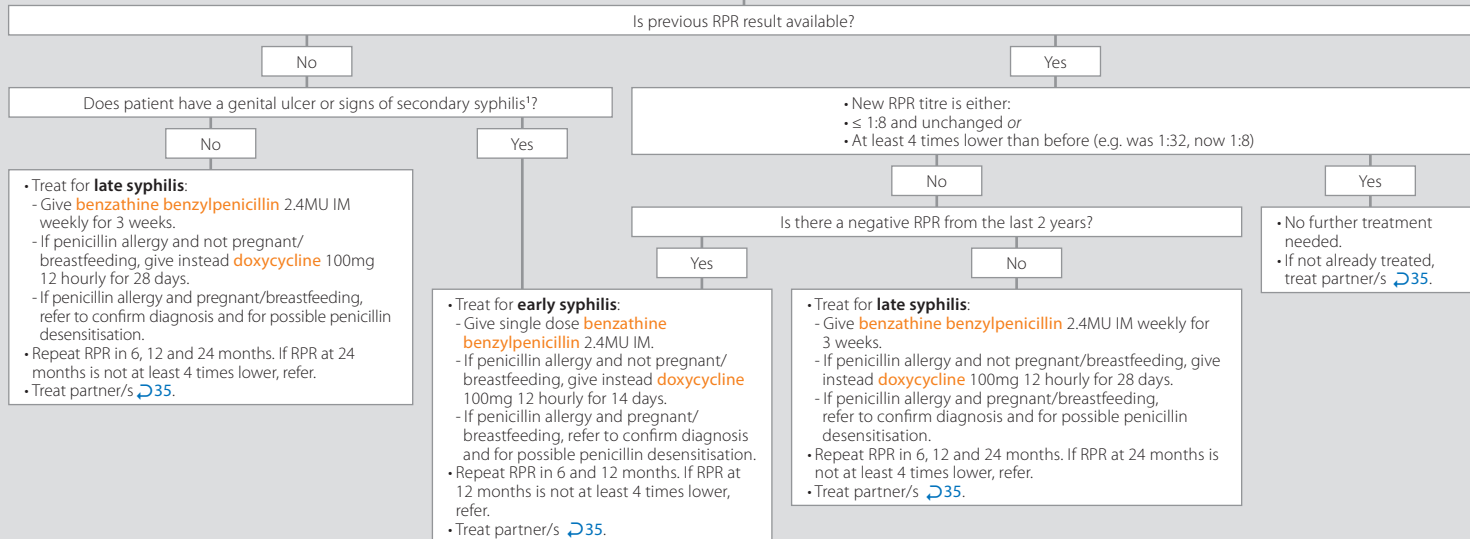


# Positive syphilis result

If fingerprick syphilis test was done, confirm positive result with Rapid Plasmin Reagin (RPR) test. If RPR negative, repeat test in 4-6 weeks.

## Approach to the patient with a positive RPR result

First assess and advise the patient and his/her partner/s [↪35](#).



## Manage the newborn of the RPR positive mother:

- If baby well and mother fully treated > 1 month before delivery: give single dose **benzathine benzylpenicillin** 50 000 units/kg IM.
- If signs of congenital syphilis<sup>2</sup>, or mother not fully treated or treated < 1 month before delivery doctor to start **procaine benzylpenicillin** 50 000 units/kg IM daily for 10 days, and refer.

<sup>1</sup>The signs of secondary syphilis occur 4-8 weeks after the primary ulcer and include a generalized rash (including palms and soles), flu-like symptoms, flat wart-like genital lesions, mouth ulcers and patchy hair loss. <sup>2</sup>Signs of congenital syphilis are rash (red/blue spots or bruising especially on soles and palms), jaundice, pallor, distended abdomen, swelling, low birth weight, runny nose/respiratory distress, hypoglycaemia.

# Abnormal vaginal bleeding

## Give urgent attention to the patient with vaginal bleeding and one or more of:

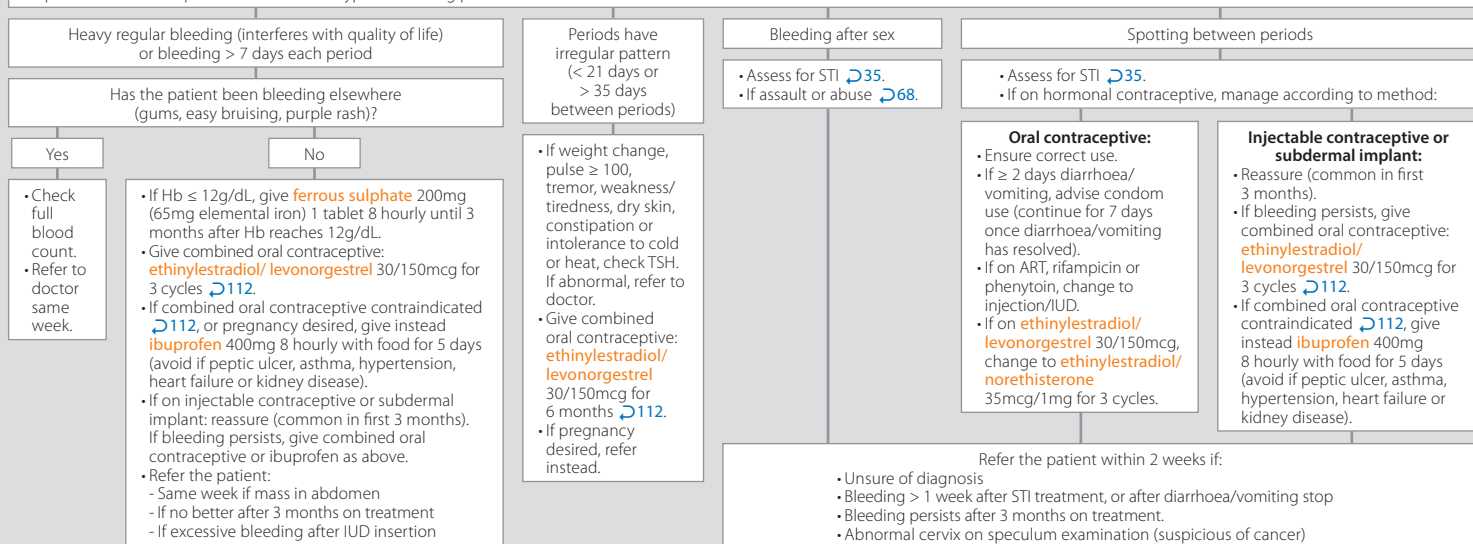
- Pregnant →114
- BP < 90/60
- Postpartum or following miscarriage/termination of pregnancy →118.
- Pallor with pulse  $\geq$  100, respiratory rate > 30, dizziness/faintness or chest pain

### Management:

- If BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- Refer urgently.

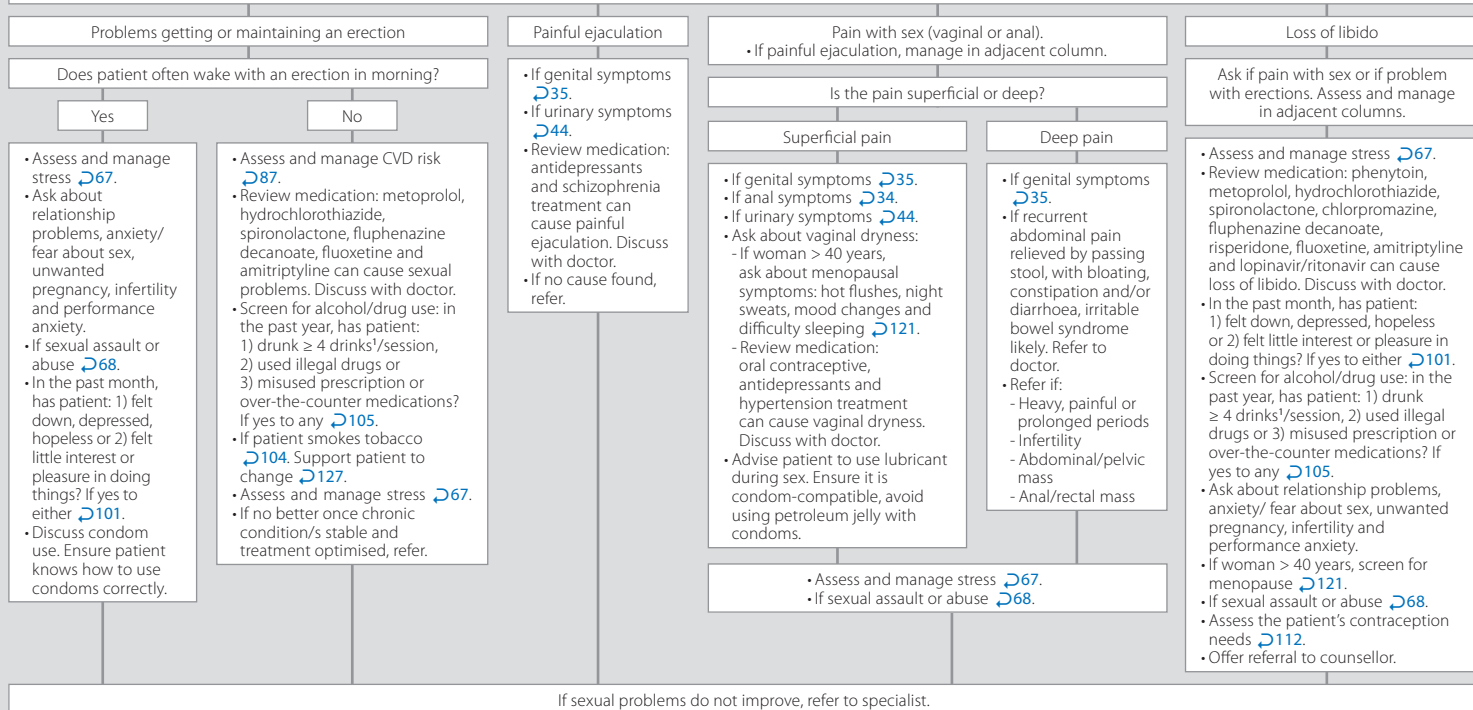
## Approach to the patient with abnormal vaginal bleeding not needing urgent attention

- Do a bimanual palpation for pelvic masses, a speculum examination to visualise cervix and a cervical screen →40.
- If > 40 years, ask about menopausal symptoms: hot flushes, night sweats, vaginal dryness, mood changes, difficulty sleeping and sexual problems →121. If new bleeding occurs > 1 year after final period, refer same week.
- If patient is not menopausal determine the type of bleeding problem:



# Sexual problems

Ask about problems getting or maintaining an erection, pain with sex, painful ejaculation or loss of libido:



<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Urinary symptoms

## Give urgent attention to the patient with urinary symptoms and one or more of:

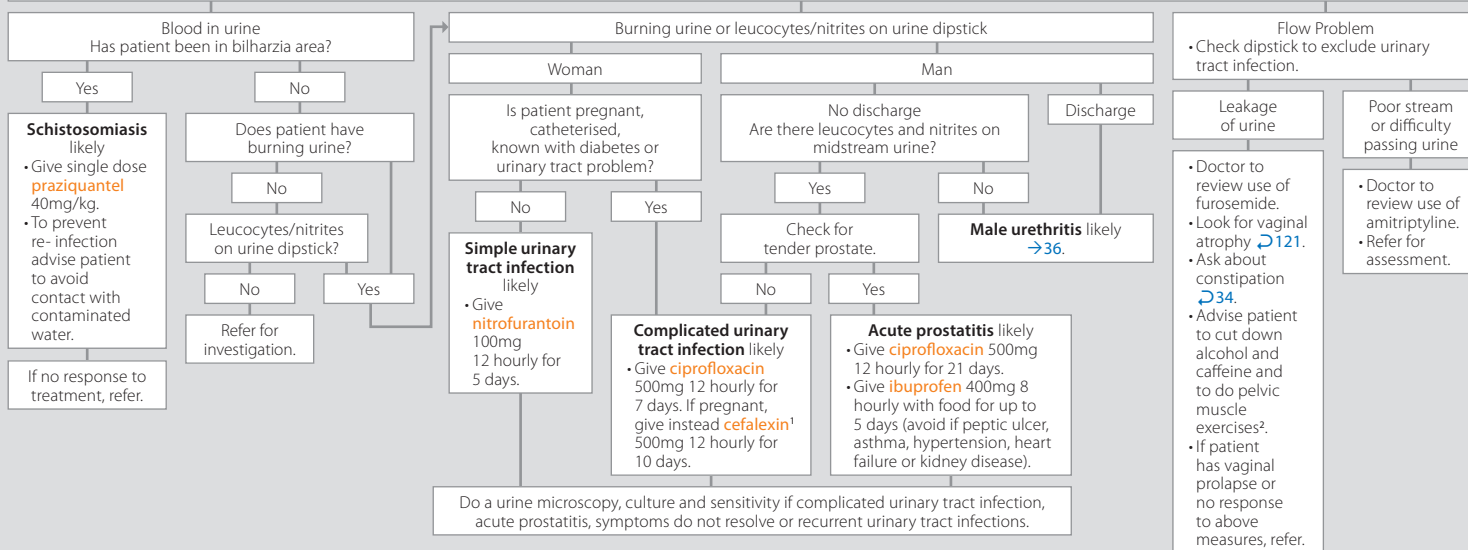
- Unable to pass urine with lower abdominal discomfort/distention
- Flank pain with leucocytes/nitrites on urine dipstick, **pyelonephritis** likely. If also vomiting, BP < 90/60, pulse  $\geq$  100, temperature > 39°C, pregnant,  $\geq$  60 years or chronic illness: **complicated pyelonephritis** likely.

### Management:

- If unable to pass urine, insert urinary catheter.
- If **complicated pyelonephritis** likely, give **ceftriaxone**<sup>1</sup> 1g IV/IM. If **pyelonephritis not complicated**, treat below. If unsure about diagnosis or severe pain, refer. If BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- Refer same day

## Approach to the patient with urinary symptoms not needing urgent attention

- If **pyelonephritis not complicated**: send urine for microscopy, culture, sensitivity. Give **ciprofloxacin** 500mg 12 hourly for 10 days and **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly. If no better after 2 days, refer.
- Check urine dipstick. If glucose on dipstick or urinary frequency exclude diabetes [↪89](#). Also manage as below:

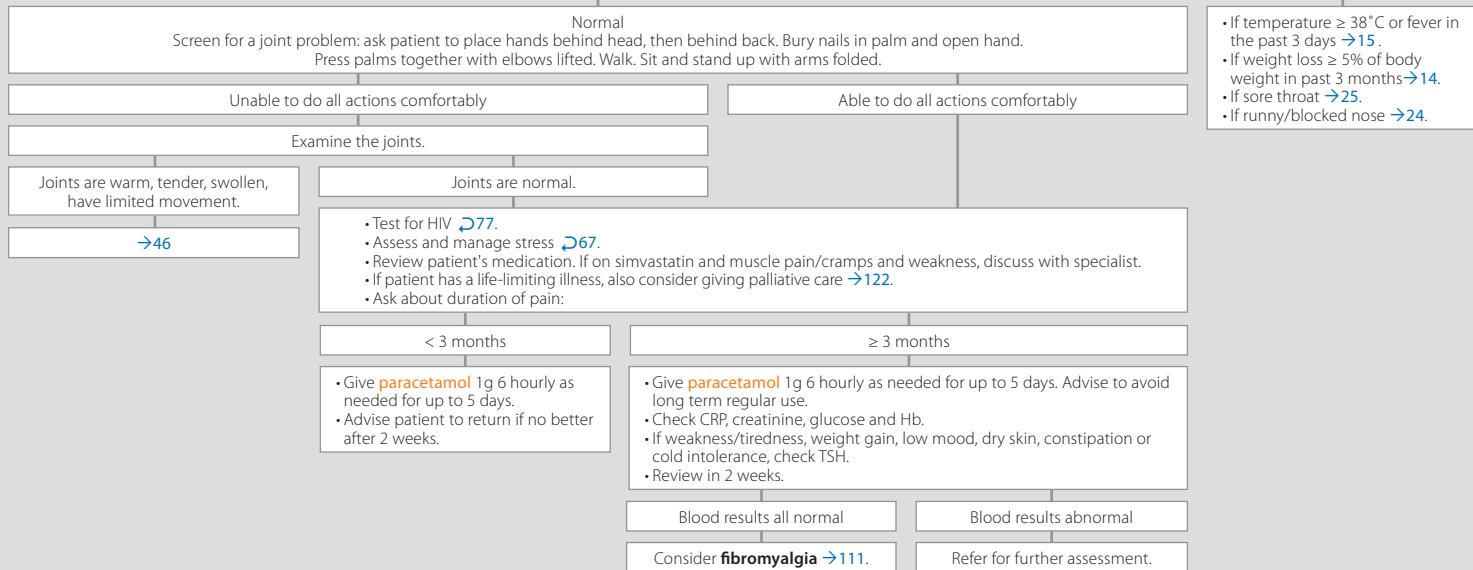


<sup>1</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>Repeated contraction and relaxation of pelvic floor muscles.

# Body/general pain

## Approach to the patient who aches all over

- If on ART, check for urgent side effects →82.
- Check temperature and weight.
- Ask about a sore throat, runny/blocked nose or fever in the past 3 days.



# Joint symptoms

## Give urgent attention to the patient with a joint symptom and:

- Short history of single warm, swollen, extremely painful joint with limited range of movement
- If pregnant with travel history to Zika area and any of: fever, rash or red eyes during/within 2 weeks of travel, refer for investigation.

### Management:

- If recent trauma, immobilise and arrange x-ray.
- If known with gout, discuss with specialist if referral necessary or if to manage as **acute gout** →110.
- Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with a joint symptom not needing urgent attention

Check if problem is in the joint: patient to place hands behind head, then behind back. Bury nails in palm and open hand. Press palms together with elbows lifted. Walk. Sit and stand up with arms folded.

Able to do all actions comfortably

Joint problem unlikely

- If generalised body pain →45.
- If back pain →47.
- If neck pain →48.
- If arm symptoms →48.
- If leg symptoms →49.
- If foot symptoms →50.

Unable to do all actions comfortably

Has there been recent trauma?

No

Ask about duration of joint pain

< 6 weeks  
Recent genital discharge or painless non-itchy skin rash?

Yes

### Gonococcal arthritis likely

- Usually involves wrists, ankles, hand and feet.
- Refer patient same day.
- Treat patient's partner/s as for cervicitis/male urethritis →35.

No

Sudden onset of 1-3 warm, extremely painful, red, swollen joints (often big toe or knee)?

No

- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days. If no response, give **ibuprofen** 400mg 8 hourly with food as needed (avoid ibuprofen if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease).
- Test for HIV →77.
- Review after 1 month or sooner if joint pain worsens. If worsens, refer.

Yes

### Acute gout likely →110

Yes

### Musculoskeletal sprain/strain likely

- Rest and elevate joint.
- Apply ice.
- Apply pressure bandage.
- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days. If no response, give **ibuprofen** 400mg 8 hourly with food as needed for up to 7 days (avoid ibuprofen if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease).
- Advise patient to mobilise joint after 2-3 days, if not too painful.
- Review after 1 week: if no better, arrange x-ray and doctor review.

### Chronic arthritis likely →109

# Back pain

## Give urgent attention to the patient with back pain and one or more of:

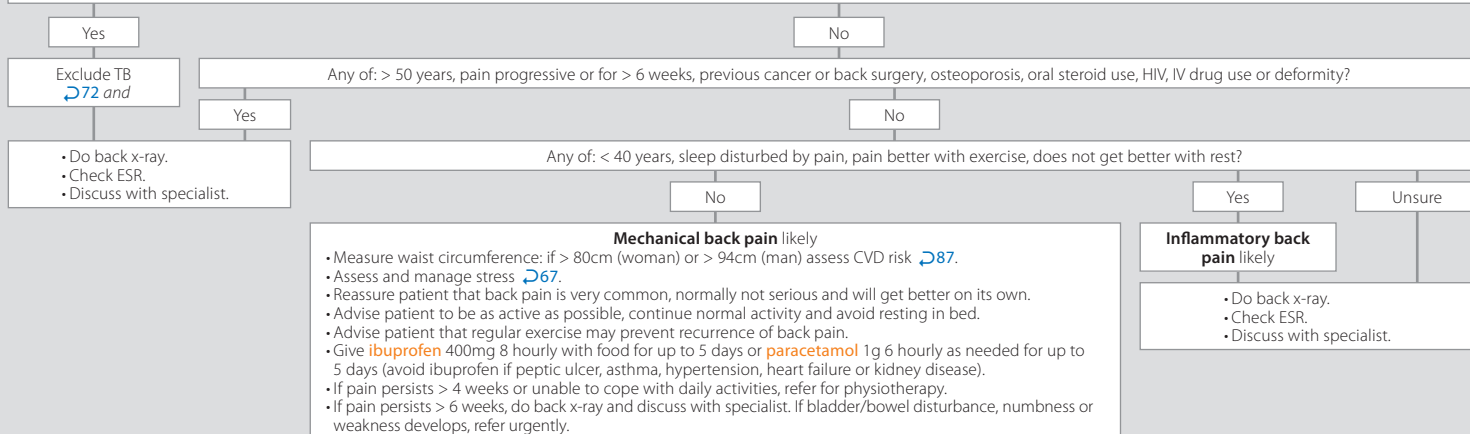
- Bladder or bowel disturbance - retention or incontinence
- Numbness of buttocks, perineum or legs
- Leg weakness or difficulty walking
- Recent trauma and x-ray unavailable or abnormal
- Sudden severe upper abdominal pain with nausea/vomiting: **pancreatitis** likely
- Pulsatile abdominal mass: **abdominal aortic aneurysm** likely
- If flank pain or fever, check urine dipstick:
  - If leucocytes/nitrites, **pyelonephritis** likely. If also vomiting, BP < 90/60, pulse  $\geq$  100, temperature > 39°C, pregnant,  $\geq$  60 years or chronic illness: **complicated pyelonephritis** likely
  - If blood with sudden, severe, one-sided pain radiating to groin: **kidney stone** likely

### Management:

- If **pancreatitis** likely: give **Ringer's lactate** 1L IV rapidly regardless of BP, then give 1L 4 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- If **abdominal aortic aneurysm** likely: avoid giving IV fluids even if BP < 90/60 (raising blood pressure may worsen rupture).
- If **complicated pyelonephritis** likely: give **ceftriaxone**<sup>1</sup> 1g IV/IM. If **pyelonephritis not complicated**: treat as below. If unsure about diagnosis or severe pain, refer. If BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- If **kidney stone** likely: give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 1L IV 6 hourly and **ibuprofen**<sup>2</sup> 800mg orally.
- Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with back pain not needing urgent attention

- If **pyelonephritis not complicated**: send urine for microscopy, culture, sensitivity. Give **ciprofloxacin** 500mg 12 hourly for 10 days and **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed. If no better after 2 days, refer same day.
- Does patient have any of: cough, weight loss, night sweats or fever?



<sup>1</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>Avoid if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease.

# Neck pain

## Give urgent attention to the patient with neck pain and one or more of:

- Neck stiffness/meningism and temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$ : give **ceftriaxone**<sup>1</sup> 2g IV/IM and **vancomycin** 1g IV. If  $\geq 50$  years or impaired immunity<sup>2</sup>, also give **ampicillin**<sup>1</sup> 2g IV.
- Neurological symptoms in arms/legs: weakness, numbness, clumsiness, stiffness, change in gait or difficulty with co-ordination
- Recent trauma and x-ray unavailable or abnormal, or neurological symptoms: immobilise neck with rigid collar and sandbags/blocks on either side of head.

### Management:

- Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with neck pain not needing urgent attention

Any of: > 50 years, pain progressive or for > 6 weeks, previous cancer/TB/neck surgery, osteoporosis, oral steroid use, HIV, diabetes, IV drug use or unexplained weight loss/fever?

Yes

- Do cervical spine x-rays.
- Check ESR.
- Discuss with specialist

No

- Give pain relief as needed: give **ibuprofen**<sup>3</sup> 400mg 8 hourly with food or **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly for up to 5 days.
- If no arm pain, refer for physiotherapy.
- If no response after 6 weeks, weakness/numbness develops or pain worsens, do cervical spine x-rays and refer.

# Arm symptoms

Check if problem is in the joint: patient to place hands behind head; then behind back. Bury nails in palm and open hand. Press palms together with elbows lifted. If unable to do all actions comfortably →46.

## Give urgent attention to the patient with arm symptoms and one or more of:

- Arm pain with chest pain →27.
- Recent trauma with pain and limited movement: immobilise, arrange x-ray and discuss with doctor. If arm/hand cold, pale, decreased pulses or numb or open fracture, refer urgently.
- If new sudden weakness of arm, may have difficulty speaking or visual disturbance: consider **stroke** or **TIA** →94.

## Approach to the patient with arm symptoms not needing urgent attention

Painful shoulder

**Referred pain** likely  
Ask about neck pain (see above), cough/difficulty breathing →28, abdominal pain →31, pregnancy →114.

Wrist/hand pain: intermittent, worse at night, relieved by shaking. May be numbness/tingling in 1st, 2nd and 3rd fingers or weakness of hand.

**Carpal tunnel syndrome** likely  
Refer.

Elbow pain with or after elbow flexion/extension.  
May have decreased grip strength.

**Tennis or golfer's elbow** likely  
• Advise patient to apply ice to elbow and rest arm.  
• Give **ibuprofen**<sup>3</sup> 400mg 8 hourly with food for 10 days.  
• If no better after 6 weeks or worsens, refer.

Pain at base of thumb worsened by thumb or wrist movement or catching/locking of finger

**Tenosynovitis of hand/wrist** likely  
• Rest and splint joint.  
• Give **ibuprofen**<sup>3</sup> 400mg 8 hourly with food.  
• If no better after 6 weeks or worsens, refer.

<sup>1</sup>If penicillin allergy with previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria, discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>Known with HIV or lymphoma, pregnant or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids. <sup>3</sup>Avoid if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease.

SYMPTOMS  
CONTENTS

CHRONIC  
CONDITIONS  
CONTENTS

GENERAL  
HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC  
RESPIRATORY  
DISEASE

CHRONIC  
DISEASES  
OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

MENTAL  
HEALTH

MUSCULO-  
SKELETAL  
DISORDERS

WOMEN'S  
HEALTH

PALLIATIVE  
CARE



# Leg symptoms

- Check if problem is in the joint: ask patient to walk. Sit and stand up with arms folded. If unable to do all actions comfortably →46.
- If the problem is also in the foot →50.

## Give urgent attention to the patient with leg symptoms and one or more of:

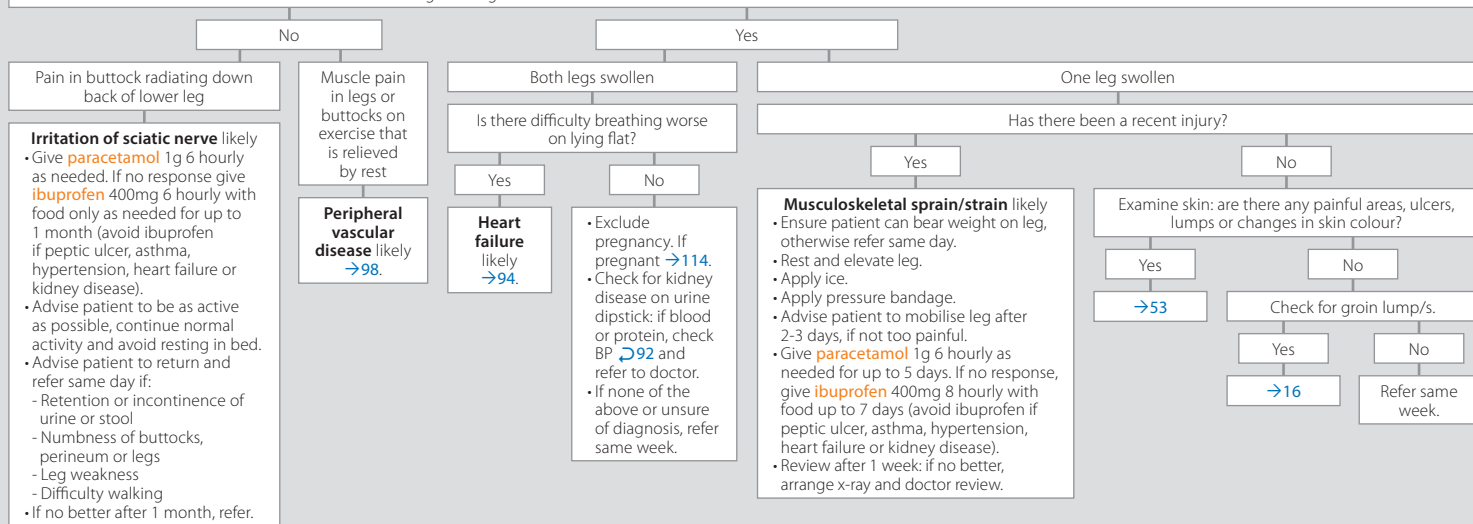
- Unable to bear weight following injury →12.
- Swelling and pain in one calf: **deep venous thrombosis** likely, especially if BMI > 30, smoker, immobile, pregnant, on oestrogen, leg trauma, recent hospitalisation, TB or cancer
- Sudden severe leg pain at rest with any of the following in the leg: numbness, weakness, pallor, no pulse: **acute limb ischaemia** likely
- Muscle pain in legs or buttocks on exercise associated with pain at rest, gangrene or ulceration: **critical limb ischaemia** likely

### Management:

- Refer same day.

## Approach to the patient with leg symptoms not needing urgent attention

- Review patient's medication. If on simvastatin and muscle pain/cramps and weakness, discuss with specialist.
- Is there leg swelling?



# Foot symptoms

Check if problem is in the joint: ask patient to walk. Sit and stand up with arms folded. If unable to do all actions comfortably →46.

## Give urgent attention to the patient with foot symptoms and one or more of:

- Unable to bear weight following injury →12.
- Sudden severe foot pain at rest with any of the following in the leg: numbness, weakness, pallor, no pulse: **acute limb ischaemia** likely
- Muscle pain in legs or buttocks on exercise associated with foot pain at rest, gangrene or ulceration: **critical limb ischaemia** likely

### Management

- Refer same day.

## Approach to the patient with foot symptoms not needing urgent attention

If cracks/peeling/scaly lesions between toes or thickened scaly skin on soles/heels/sides of feet, **tinea pedis (athlete's foot)** likely →55.

### Generalised foot pain

Constant burning pain, pins/needles or numbness of feet worse at night

#### Peripheral neuropathy likely

- Test for HIV →77. If HIV positive, give routine care →78.
- Exclude diabetes →89.
- Give **amitriptyline** 10-75mg at night and **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly.
- If no response, add **ibuprofen** 400mg 8 hourly with food up to 5 days (avoid if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease).
- Refer same week if one-sided, other neurological signs or loss of function.
- Check if patient is on IPT, TB treatment or ART:
  - If on IPT or TB treatment: give **pyridoxine** 75mg daily.
  - If on stavudine: switch medication →82.

Foot pain with muscle pain in legs or buttocks

**Peripheral vascular disease** likely →98.

### Localised pain

Ensure that shoes fit properly.

Heel pain, worse on starting walking

#### Plantar fasciitis likely

- Advise patient to avoid bare feet and to apply ice.
- If BMI > 25, assess CVD risk →87.
- Give as needed: **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly or **ibuprofen** 400mg 8 hourly with food for up to 5 days (avoid ibuprofen if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease).
- Refer for physiotherapy.

Foot deformity

Bony lump at base of big toe; may have callus, redness or ulcer

#### Bunion likely

- Advise pain relief as needed: apply ice, give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly or **ibuprofen** 400mg 8 hourly with food for up to 5 days (avoid ibuprofen if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease).
- If severe pain or ulcer, refer.

## In the patient with diabetes or PVD, identify the foot at risk. Review more frequently the patient with diabetes or PVD and one or more of:

- Skin: callus, corns, cracks, wet soft skin between toes →55, ulcers →59.
- Foot deformity: check for bunions (see above). If foot deformity, refer for specialist care.
- Sensation: light prick sensation abnormal after 2 attempts
- Circulation: absent or reduced foot pulses

## Advise the patient with diabetes or PVD to care for feet daily to prevent ulcers and amputation

- Inspect and wash feet daily and carefully dry between the toes. Avoid soaking your feet.
- Moistened dry cracked feet daily. Avoid moisturising between toes.
- Tell your health worker at once if you have any cuts, blisters or sores on the feet.
- Avoid walking barefoot or wearing shoes without socks. Change socks/stockings daily. Inspect inside shoes daily.
- Clip nails straight, file sharp edges. Avoid cutting corns/calluses yourself or chemicals/plasters to remove them.
- Avoid testing water temperature with feet or using hot water bottles or heaters near feet.

# Burn/s

## Give urgent attention to the patient with burn/s:

### Give facemask oxygen if:

- Burns to face, neck or upper chest
- Cough, difficulty/noisy breathing or hoarse voice: **inhalation burn** likely
- Patient drowsy or confused
- Oxygen saturation < 90%
- Percentage total body surface area (%TBSA burnt) > 15%

### Remove any sources of heat:

- Remove burnt or hot clothing. Immerse burnt skin in cool water or apply cool, wet towels for 30 minutes.
- Cover patient with clean, dry sheet to prevent hypothermia.

### Calculate size and depth of burn:

- Calculate percentage total body surface area (%TBSA) burnt using adjacent guide.
- If red, blistered, painful, wet: **partial thickness burn** likely
- If white/black leathery, painless, dry: **full thickness burn** likely

### Assess and manage fluid needs if %TBSA burnt >10%:

- Insert a large-bore IV line in area away from burned skin. If %TBSA burnt significant, insert a second IV line.
- Give **Ringer's lactate IV**:
  - Calculate total volume needed over next 24 hours (mL) = %TBSA burnt x weight(kg) x 4
  - Give half this volume in the first 8 hours after burn. Calculate the hourly volume (mL) = total volume ÷ 2 ÷ 8
- Insert a urine catheter and document urine output every hour.

### Give medication:

- If pain severe, dilute **morphine sulphate** 10mg with 10mL water for injection. Give 1mL/min up to 5mL. If pain not severe, give **paracetamol** 1g orally 6 hourly.
- Give **tetanus toxoid** 0.5mL IM if none in past 5 years.

### Give wound care:

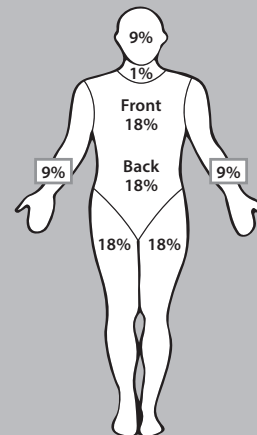
- Cover burn with a non-adherent dressing or wrap in clean, dry sheet and blanket.

### Refer same day the patient with any of:

- Burn covering > 10% TBSA
- Full-thickness burn of any size
- Burn involves face/neck/hands/feet/genitals/joint
- Circumferential burn of limbs/chest
- Inhalation/electric/chemical burn
- Other injuries
- While awaiting transport, monitor vital signs: BP, pulse, respiratory rate, oxygen saturation, level of consciousness and urine output.
- Write a referral letter and include details of how burn occurred, vital signs, fluid calculation, details of fluid and other medications given.
- Review daily below if not needing same day referral.

### Calculate % total body surface area (TBSA):

- Head 9%
- Neck 1%
- Front 18%
- Back 18%
- Each arm 9%
- Each leg 18%



### Review daily the patient with a burn not needing same day referral:

- Clean with water and mild soap. Dress wound daily: apply **silver sulfadiazine** 1% cream and cover with non-adherent dressing. Check for infection (red, warm, painful, swollen, smelly or pus).
- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days. If increased pain/anxiety with dressing changes, give **codeine** 30mg 1 hour before changing dressing.
- Refer if signs of infection, pain despite medication or burn not healed within 2 weeks.

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Bites and stings

## Give urgent attention to the patient with a bite/sting and one or more of:

- Snake bite (even if bite marks not seen)
- Sudden diffuse rash or face/tongue swelling with difficulty breathing, BP < 90/60 or collapse: **anaphylaxis** likely
- Weakness, drooping eyelids, difficulty swallowing and speaking, double vision
- Animal/human bite with any of: multiple bites, deep/large wound, loss of tissue, involving joint/bone, temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$  or pus
- BP < 90/60
- Excessive or pulsatile bleeding

### Management:

#### • If snake bite:

- Reassure patient.
- Remove jewellery and immobilise bitten limb. Avoid applying tourniquet or trying to suck out venom.
- Discuss antivenom with specialist or local poison helpline.

#### • If anaphylaxis likely:

- Raise legs and give face mask oxygen.
- Give immediately **epinephrine** 0.5mL (1:1000 solution) IM into mid outer thigh. Repeat every 5-15 minutes if needed.
- Give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 1-2L IV rapidly, regardless of BP. Then if BP < 90/60, also give fluids as below.
- Remove stinger.
- If BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- If excessive or pulsatile bleeding, apply direct pressure and elevate limb. If bleeding severe and persists, apply tourniquet above injury.
- Remove loose/dead skin and clean wound with soap and water. Irrigate under pressure with **sodium chloride 0.9%** for 15 minutes. Avoid suturing the wound.
- Give **tetanus toxoid** 0.5mL IM if none in past 5 years. If < 3 tetanus vaccine doses in lifetime, also give **tetanus immunoglobulin** 250 units IM at different site to toxoid with separate syringe.
- Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with a bite/sting not needing urgent attention

### Human or animal bite/s

- Remove loose/dead skin and clean wound with soap and water. Irrigate under pressure with **sodium chloride 0.9%** for 15 minutes. Avoid suturing the wound.
- Consider rabies risk if bite/scratch or licking of eyes/mouth/broken skin by a dog, fox, raccoon, skunk, jackal or mongoose; or any contact with a bat.
  - Discuss with specialist or local poison hotline.
  - Clean wound thoroughly with **povidone iodine** solution.
  - Give **rabies vaccine** 1 ampoule IM into shoulder/upper arm muscle immediately and repeat on day 3. If patient unimmunised or unsure, repeat vaccine on day 7 and 14 and if impaired immunity<sup>1</sup>, also give a 5th dose on day 28.
  - If patient unimmunised, also give **rabies immunoglobulin** 20 units/kg immediately. Inject most into wound, and the rest IM at a distant site.
- If impaired immunity<sup>1</sup> or bite is deep, infected, involves hand/head/neck/genitals or bite from cat or human: give **amoxicillin/clavulanate**<sup>2</sup> 500/125mg 8 hourly for 7 days.
- If human bite has broken the skin, also assess need for HIV and hepatitis B post-exposure prophylaxis [↗71](#).
- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- If bite infected and no response to antibiotics, refer.

### Insect/spider/scorpion bite or sting

- Remove stinger. Clean wound with soap and water. Apply ice pack for pain/swelling.
- If itch and rash, give **loratadine** 10mg daily and **ranitidine** 150mg daily for 3 days. If no response, give **prednisolone** 60mg daily for 5 days.
- If pain, give **ibuprofen**<sup>3</sup> 400mg 8 hourly with food for up to 5 days.
- If very painful scorpion sting, inject **lidocaine 2%** 2mL around site.

Give **tetanus toxoid** 0.5mL IM if none in past 5 years. If < 3 tetanus vaccine doses in lifetime, also give **tetanus immunoglobulin** 250 units IM at different site to toxoid with separate syringe.

<sup>1</sup>Known with HIV, diabetes or cancer, pregnant or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids. <sup>2</sup>If penicillin allergy, give instead **clindamycin** 300mg 6 hourly and **co-trimoxazole** 160/800mg 12 hourly for 7 days. <sup>3</sup>Avoid if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease.

# Skin symptoms

## Give urgent attention to the patient with skin symptoms and one or more of:

- Sudden diffuse rash or face/tongue swelling with difficulty breathing, BP < 90/60 or collapse: **anaphylaxis** likely
- Purple/red rash with fever, headache, neck stiffness/meningism, nausea/vomiting or confusion: **meningococcal disease** likely
- Extensive blisters
- If on abacavir, check for abacavir hypersensitivity reaction [↪82](#).
- **Serious drug reaction** likely if on any medication and one or more of:
  - BP < 90/60
  - Temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$
  - Abdominal pain
  - Vomiting or diarrhoea
  - Involves mouth, eyes or genitals
  - Blisters, peeling or raw areas
  - Jaundice
- If pregnant with travel to Zika area and any of: fever, joint pain or red eyes during/within 2 weeks of travel, refer for investigation.



© University of Cape Town



© University of Cape Town

### Management:

#### • Anaphylaxis likely:

- Raise legs and give face mask oxygen.
- Give immediately **epinephrine** 0.5mL (1:1000 solution) IM into mid outer thigh. Repeat every 5-15 minutes if needed.
- Give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 1-2L IV rapidly, regardless of BP.

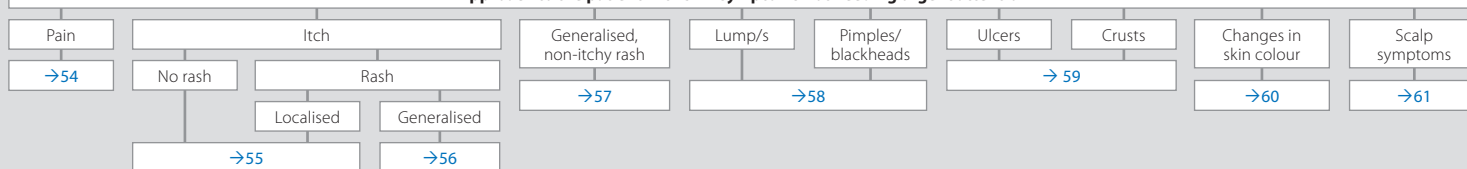
#### • Meningococcal disease likely: give **ceftriaxone**<sup>1</sup> 2g IV/IM.

#### • Serious drug reaction likely: stop all medication. If peeling or raw skin, also manage as for burns before referral [↪51](#).

- If BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.

#### • Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient with skin symptoms not needing urgent attention



If rash is extensive, recurrent or difficult to treat, test for HIV [↪77](#).

<sup>1</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor.

# Painful skin

Red, warm lump which may be fluctuant in the centre. May discharge pus.



© University of Cape Town

## Boil/abscess likely

- If fluctuant, arrange incision and drainage.
- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- If > 2cm, multiple lesions or impaired immunity<sup>1</sup>, give **cloxacillin** 500mg 6 hourly for 7 days. If penicillin allergy, give instead **clindamycin** 300mg 6 hourly for 7 days.
- Advise to wash with soap and water, keep nails short and avoid sharing clothing or towels.
- If recurrent boils or abscesses:
  - Test for HIV [D77](#) and diabetes [D89](#).
  - Wash once with **chlorhexidine 5%** solution from neck down.
  - Apply **mupirocin 2%** ointment inside nostrils twice a day for 5 days.
- Refer same day if:
  - Temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$
  - BP < 90/60
  - Pulse > 100
  - Extensive surrounding infection
  - Difficult area to drain (face, genitals, hands)
  - No response to treatment within 2 days

Redness, warmth and swelling of skin  
Are borders poorly or clearly defined?

## Poorly-defined borders



© University of Cape Town

## Cellulitis likely

- Give **cloxacillin** 500mg 6 hourly for 7 days. If penicillin allergy, give instead **clindamycin** 300mg 6 hourly for 7 days.

## Clearly-defined raised borders



CDC Public Health Image Library

## Erysipelas likely

- Give **phenoxymethylpenicillin** 500mg 6 hourly for 5 days. If penicillin allergy, give instead **clindamycin** 300mg 6 hourly for 5 days.

- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- If limb affected, advise to keep elevated.
- Refer same day if:
  - Temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$
  - BP < 90/60
  - Pulse > 100
  - Confused
  - Face or eye involvement
  - Extensive infection
  - Blisters or grey/black skin
  - Poorly controlled diabetes or stage 4 HIV
  - No response to treatment within 2 days

Painful blisters in a band along one side



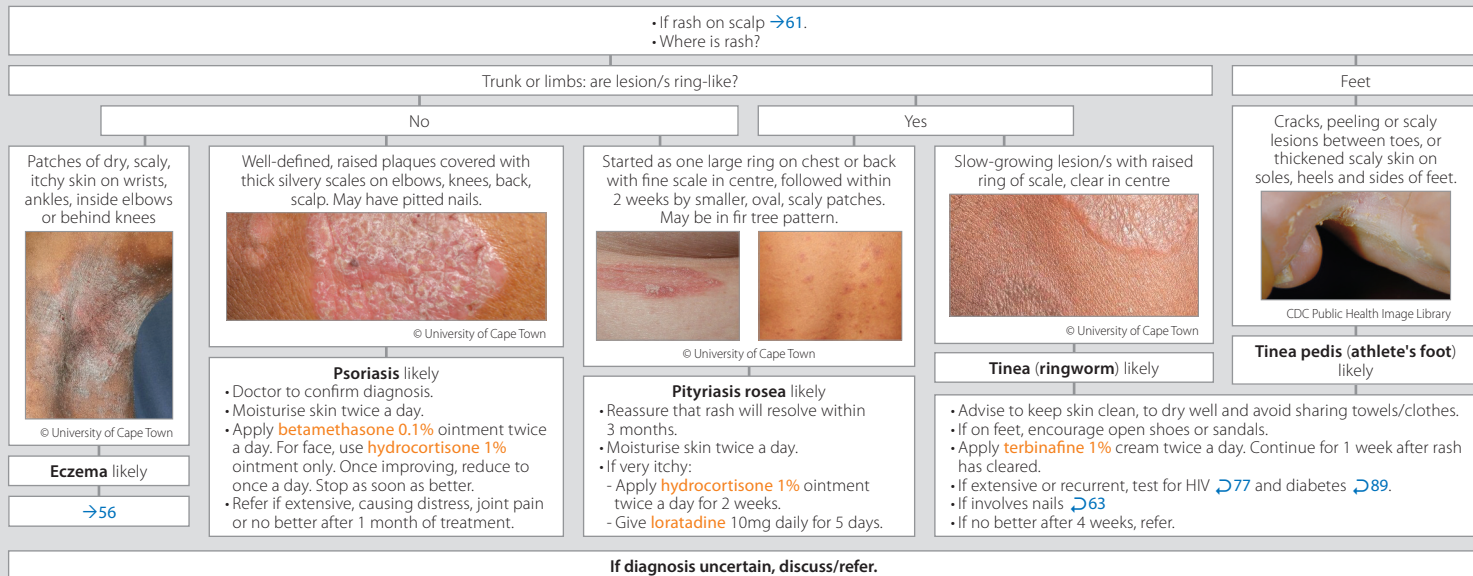
© University of Cape Town

## Herpes zoster (shingles) likely

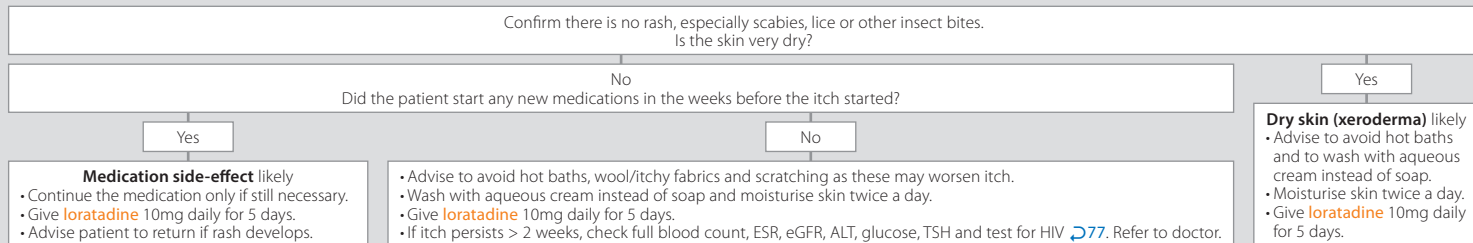
- Test for HIV [D77](#).
- Advise to keep lesions clean and dry, and to avoid skin contact with others until crusts have formed.
- Give **aciclovir** 800mg 5 times a day for 7 days if:
  - $\leq 3$  days since onset of rash or
  - $\leq 1$  week since onset of rash if impaired immunity<sup>1</sup>.
- For pain:
  - Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly for up to 5 days.
  - If needed, add **codeine** 30mg 4 hourly.
  - If pain persists after rash has healed, give **amitriptyline** 10mg at night. If no response, increase weekly up to 75mg if needed.
- If itchy, apply **calamine** lotion to rash 4 times a day as needed.
- If infected (skin red, warm, swollen), give **cloxacillin** 500mg 6 hourly for 7 days. If penicillin allergy, give instead **clindamycin** 300mg 6 hourly for 7 days.
- Refer same day if:
  - Eye, ear or nose involvement
  - Signs of meningitis (headache, temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$ , neck stiffness/meningism)
  - Rash involves more than one region

<sup>1</sup>Known with HIV, diabetes or cancer or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids.

# Localised itchy rash



# Itch with no rash

SYMPTOMS  
CONTENTSCHRONIC  
CONDITIONS  
CONTENTSGENERAL  
HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC  
RESPIRATORY  
DISEASECHRONIC  
DISEASES  
OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

MENTAL  
HEALTHMUSCULO-  
SKELETAL  
DISORDERSWOMEN'S  
HEALTHPALLIATIVE  
CARE

# Generalised itchy rash

Small red bumps and burrows in web-spaces of fingers, axillae, waist and genitals. Very itchy, especially at night.



© BMJ Best Practice

## Scabies likely

- Apply **permethrin 5%** cream from neck to soles of feet. Wash off after 12 hours.
- Give **loratadine 10mg** daily until itch subsides.
- Treat all household contacts and sexual partners at the same time, even if asymptomatic.
- Wash recently used linen and clothing in very hot water and dry well.
- If no improvement after 2 weeks, repeat treatment.

Hyperpigmented, itchy bumps on limbs, trunk or face



© University of Cape Town

## Papular pruritic eruption (PPE) likely

- Test for HIV →77. If HIV positive, give routine care →78.
- If lesions in webspaces, axillae or genitals, also treat for scabies in adjacent column.
- Moisturise skin twice a day.
- Apply **betamethasone 0.1%** cream twice a day for 3 weeks. For face, use instead **hydrocortisone 1%** cream.
- Give **loratadine 10mg** daily until itch subsides.
- Advise patient:
  - May be long-standing and skin often remains hyperpigmented.
  - May temporarily worsen after starting ART.

Patches of dry, scaly, itchy skin on wrists, ankles, inside elbows or behind knees.



© University of Cape Town

## Eczema likely

- Advise that eczema is a chronic condition with episodes of acute exacerbations.
- Advise to avoid triggers such as soap, detergents, heat, fabrics that cause itch.
- Assess and manage stress →67.
- Moisturise skin twice a day and immediately after bathing.
- Apply **hydrocortisone 1%** cream twice a day until improved (up to 4 weeks). If poor response, apply instead **betamethasone 0.1%** cream twice a day (avoid face).
- Give **loratadine 10mg** daily until itch subsides.
- If oozing, pus or yellow crusts, treat for infection:
  - Give **cloxacillin 500mg** 6 hourly for 7 days.
  - If penicillin allergy, give instead **clindamycin 300mg** 6 hourly for 7 days.

Very itchy, red, raised wheals that appear suddenly and usually disappear within 24 hours



© University of Cape Town

## Urticaria likely

If sudden rash with difficulty breathing, BP < 90/60 or collapse, anaphylaxis likely →53.

- Consider common triggers such as foods (milk, eggs, nuts, wheat, seafood), medications, insect bites/stings and latex. Advise to avoid identified triggers.
- Give **loratadine 10mg** daily until rash resolved.
- If no response after 24 hours, give **prednisolone 40mg** daily for 5 days.
- Advise to return immediately if any symptoms of anaphylaxis occur.

Diffuse red rash mainly on trunk, arms and legs, which appeared within 2 weeks of starting a new medication.



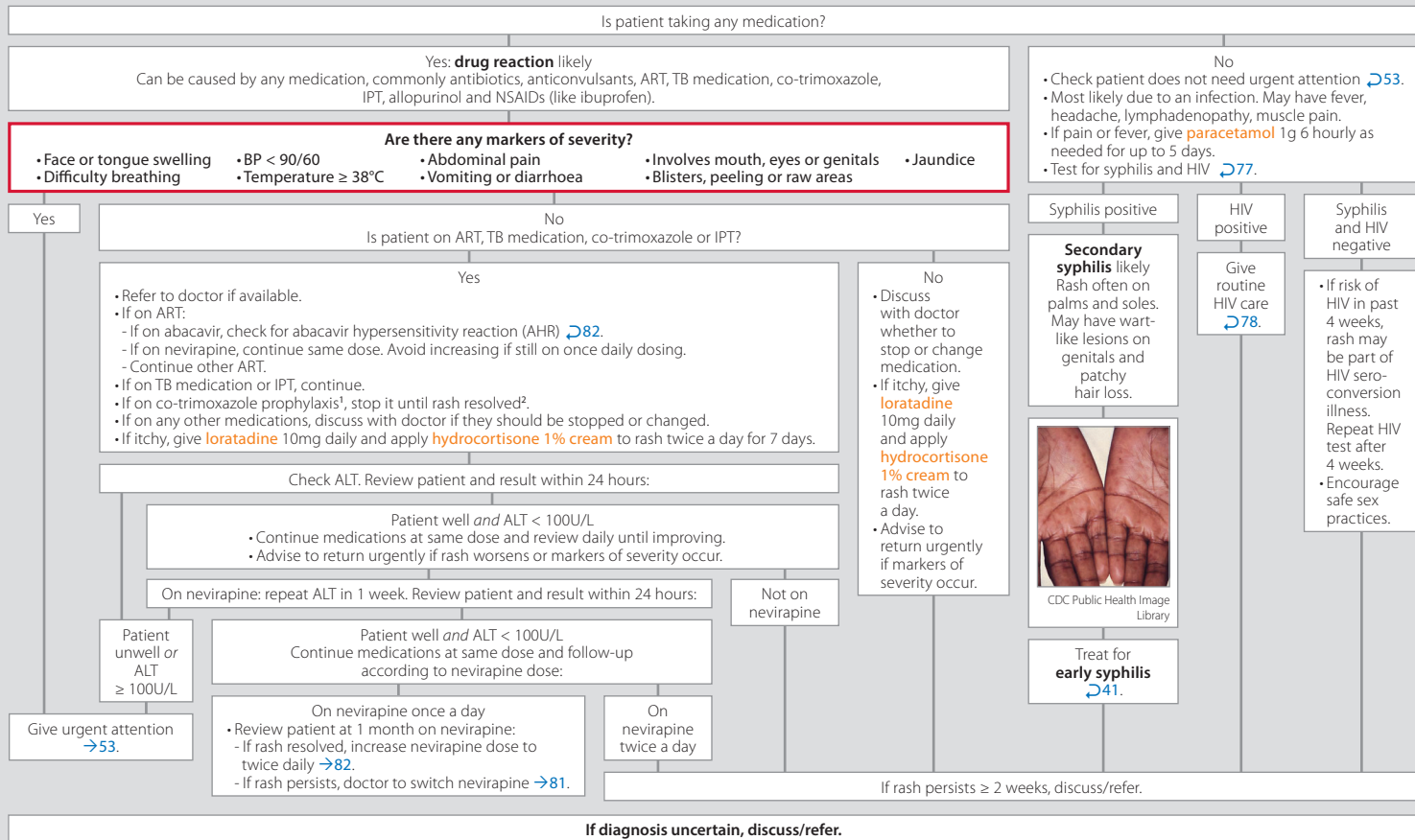
© BMJ Best Practice

## Drug reaction likely →57.

If no response to treatment, discuss/refer.



# Generalised non-itchy rash



<sup>1</sup>If on co-trimoxazole treatment for pneumocystis pneumonia (PJP), toxoplasmosis or *Isospora belli* diarrhoea, discuss with specialist. <sup>2</sup>If rash resolves, discuss with doctor about re-starting co-trimoxazole or changing instead to **dapsone** 100mg daily.

SYMPTOMS CONTENTS

CHRONIC CONDITIONS CONTENTS

GENERAL HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC RESPIRATORY DISEASE

CHRONIC DISEASES OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

MENTAL HEALTH

MUSCULO-SKELETAL DISORDERS

WOMEN'S HEALTH

PALLIATIVE CARE

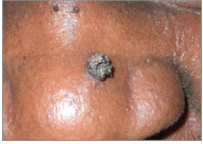
# Skin lump/s

## Refer same week the patient with a mole that:

- Is irregular in shape or colour
- Differs from surrounding moles
- Bleeds easily
- Changed in size, shape or colour
- Is > 6mm wide
- Itches

If painful, firm, red, warm lump which softens in the centre to discharge pus, **boil/abscess** likely →54.

Round, raised papules with rough surfaces



© University of Cape Town

### Warts likely

- Usually on hands, knees or elbows but can occur anywhere.
- Plantar warts on the soles of the feet are thick and hard with black dot/s.

- Reassure that warts often disappear spontaneously.
- If treatment desired:
  - Soften wart by soaking in warm water for 5 minutes at night and scrub gently with clean nail file.
  - After drying well, apply **salicylic acid 5%** 1-2 drops to wart and cover with plaster.
  - Repeat every night and continue for a week after wart has come off.
- If warts are extensive, refer.

Small, skin-coloured pearly bumps with central dimples



© University of Cape Town

### Molluscum contagiosum likely

- Test for HIV →77.
- Reassure that lesions may resolve spontaneously after several years or with ART.
- If intolerable, remove with curettage or apply **podophyllum 15%** for 4 hours, then wash off. Repeat podophyllum weekly for up to 6 weeks.
- Refer if:
  - Extensive
  - Lesions on eyelid
  - Intolerable and not responding to treatment

Painless, purple/brown lumps on skin



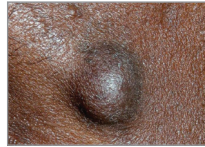
© BMJ Best Practice

### Kaposi's sarcoma likely

- Lesions vary from isolated lumps to large ulcerating tumours.
- May also appear in mouth and on genitals.
- Test for HIV →77. If HIV positive, give routine care and ART →78.
- Refer for biopsy to confirm diagnosis and for further management.

Smooth, well defined lump beneath skin

Round, firm lump. May have central hole and discharge white substance.



© University of Cape Town

### Epidermoid cyst likely

Usually found on face and trunk, uncommon on limbs

- If not infected, reassure there is no need to treat.
- If red, warm and tender, cyst is infected:
  - If fluctuant, arrange incision and drainage.
  - If extensive surrounding infection, give **cloxacillin 500mg 6 hourly** for 7 days. If penicillin allergy, give instead **clindamycin 300mg 6 hourly** for 7 days.
- If intolerable or recurrent infections, arrange for excision once infection resolved.

Soft, doughy lump which is painless and moves easily.



© University of Cape Town

### Lipoma likely

Usually found on trunk or upper limb

- Reassure lump will not become cancer and usually does not need removal.
- Refer if:
  - > 3cm
  - Causing pain or discomfort
  - Getting bigger
  - Firm or deep beneath skin
  - New lump that persists > 4 weeks
  - Intolerable

Red papules, pustules, nodules and blackheads, usually on face



© University of Cape Town

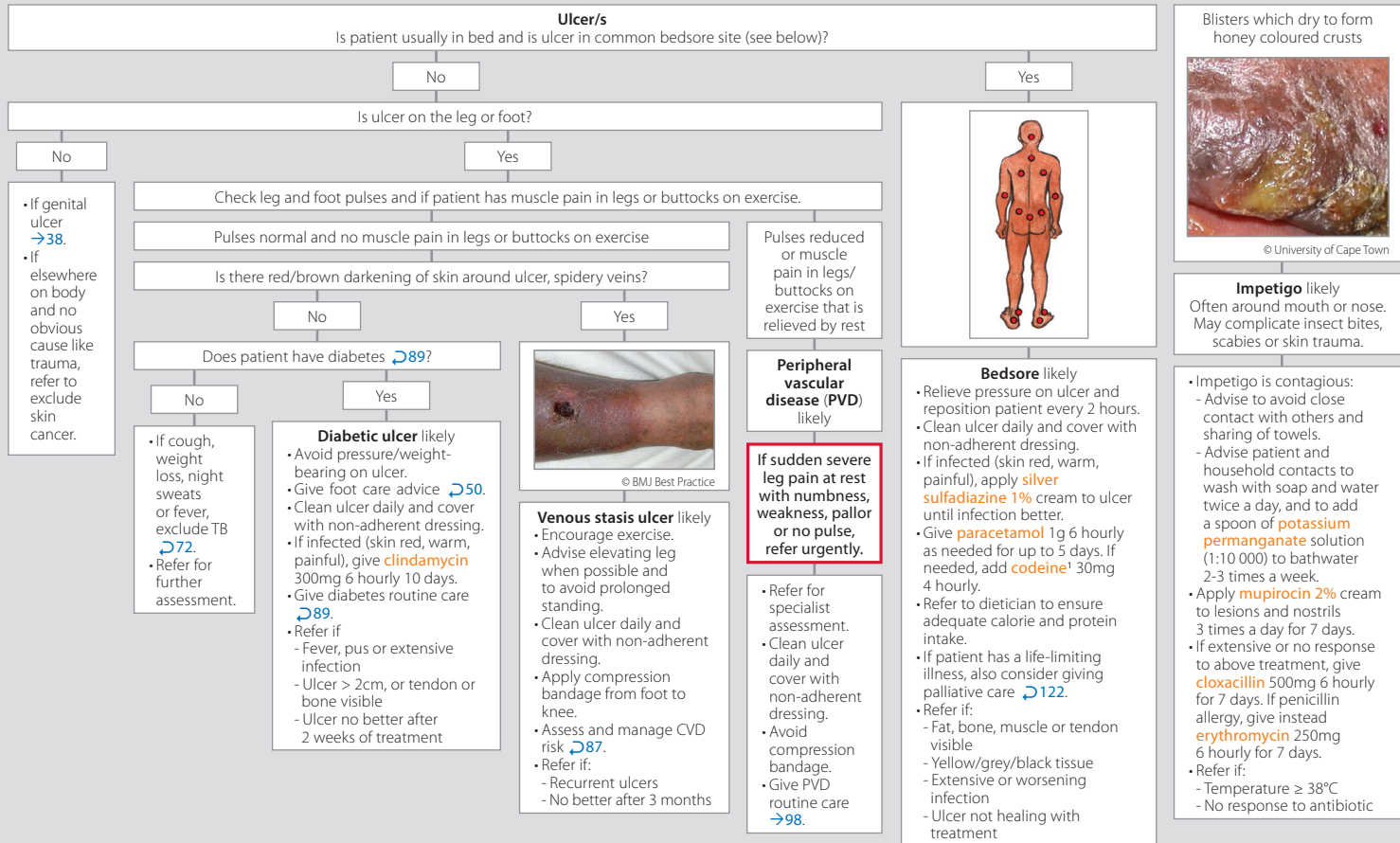
### Acne likely

May involve chest, back and upper arms

- Advise to wash skin with mild soap twice a day and to avoid picking, squeezing and scratching.
- Apply **benzoyl peroxide 5%** cream twice a day after washing. Once improving, reduce to once a day. Stop when lesions resolve.
- If red and swollen, also give **doxycycline 100mg** daily for at least 3 months. Doxycycline may interfere with oral contraceptive, advise patient to use condoms as well. Avoid if pregnant or breastfeeding.
- If woman needing contraception, advise combined oral contraceptive →112.
- Advise that response may take several weeks to months.
- If severe or no response after 6 months of treatment, refer.

If diagnosis uncertain, refer.

# Ulcers and crusts



© University of Cape Town

**Impetigo** likely

Often around mouth or nose. May complicate insect bites, scabies or skin trauma.

- Impetigo is contagious:
  - Advise to avoid close contact with others and sharing of towels.
  - Advise patient and household contacts to wash with soap and water twice a day, and to add a spoon of **potassium permanganate** solution (1:10 000) to bathwater 2-3 times a week.
  - Apply **mupirocin 2%** cream to lesions and nostrils 3 times a day for 7 days.
  - If extensive or no response to above treatment, give **cloxacillin** 500mg 6 hourly for 7 days. If penicillin allergy, give instead **erythromycin** 250mg 6 hourly for 7 days.
  - Refer if:
    - Temperature ≥ 38°C
    - No response to antibiotic

<sup>1</sup>If no diarrhoea, give **senna** 15mg 12 hourly and **docusate sodium** orally as needed for constipation.

SYMPTOMS CONTENTS

CHRONIC CONDITIONS CONTENTS

GENERAL HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC RESPIRATORY DISEASE

CHRONIC DISEASES OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

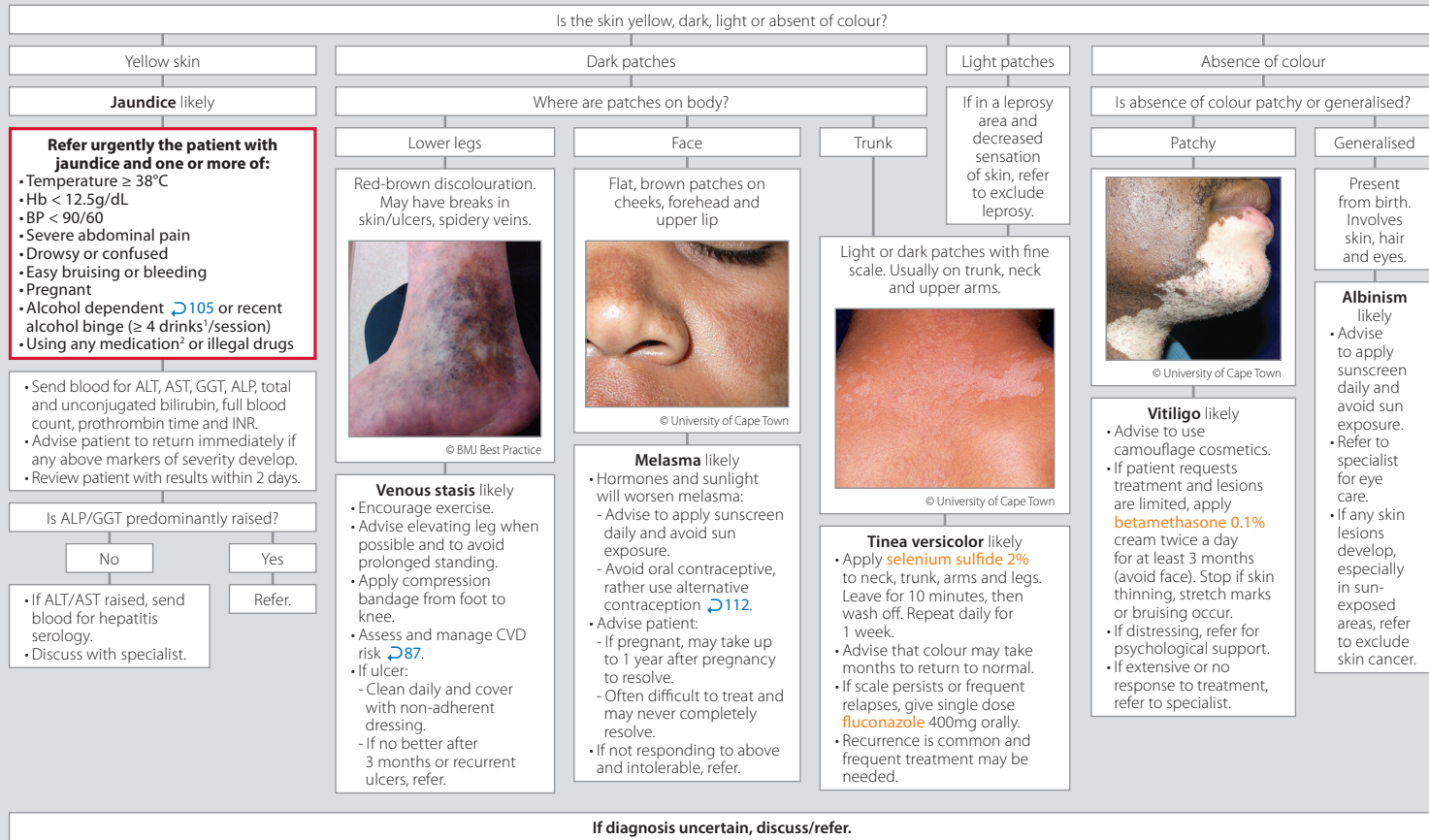
MENTAL HEALTH

MUSCULO-SKELETAL DISORDERS

WOMEN'S HEALTH

PALLIATIVE CARE

# Changes in skin colour



<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer. <sup>2</sup>If patient on atazanavir  $\rightarrow$ 81.

# Scalp symptoms

## Approach to the patient with scalp symptoms:

- If hair loss with no rash/itch →62.
- Is there a rash or only an itch?

### Itch without rash

Severe itch with lice or eggs. May have small red bites on back of neck.

- Lice** likely
- Apply **permethrin 1%** lotion to dry hair:
    - Ensure whole scalp is covered and hair is saturated.
    - Rinse off after 10 minutes.
    - Repeat after 9 days.
  - Wash clothes and linen used in past 2 days in very hot water.
  - Treat household contacts if infected or sharing a bed.

Fine, white flakes on hair and clothing

- Dandruff** likely
- Apply **selenium sulfide 2%** shampoo:
    - Massage into scalp.
    - Rinse off after 3 minutes.
    - Use at least twice a week until resolved (usually 2-4 weeks).

### Rash with or without itch

#### Scaly patches

Red/pink patches with fine greasy scales



© University of Cape Town

**Seborrhoeic dermatitis** likely  
May also occur between eyebrows, in nose folds, behind ears. Usually itchy.

- If extensive, test for HIV →77.
- Apply **selenium sulfide 2%** shampoo:
  - Massage into scalp.
  - Rinse off after 5 minutes.
  - Use at least twice a week until resolved (usually 2-4 weeks).
- Apply **betamethasone 0.1%** cream twice a day. Once improving, switch to **hydrocortisone 1%** cream twice a day until resolved (up to 4 weeks).
- If no response within 3 months, refer.

Well-defined, raised plaques covered with thick silvery scales



© University of Cape Town

**Psoriasis** likely  
May also have pitted nails and rash on elbows, knees, back.

- Doctor to confirm diagnosis.
- Moisturise skin twice a day.
- Apply **betamethasone 0.1%** cream twice a day. For face, use **hydrocortisone 1%** cream only. Once improving, reduce to once a day. Stop as soon as better.
- Refer if:
  - Extensive
  - Causing distress
  - Joint pain
  - No better after 1 month of treatment

Redness, swelling and burning/itching after recent use of hair product. May have blisters.



© University of Cape Town

- Contact dermatitis** likely
- Identify and advise patient to avoid cause.
  - Moisturise skin twice a day.
  - Apply **betamethasone 0.1%** cream twice a day (avoid face). Once improving, switch to **hydrocortisone 1%** cream twice a day until resolved.
  - If pus or yellow crusts, treat for infection:
    - Give **cloxacillin 500mg** 6 hourly for 7 days.
    - If penicillin allergy, give instead **erythromycin 250mg** 6 hourly for 7 days.
  - If no better after 1 week, refer.

Red pimples, pustules or nodules around hair follicles

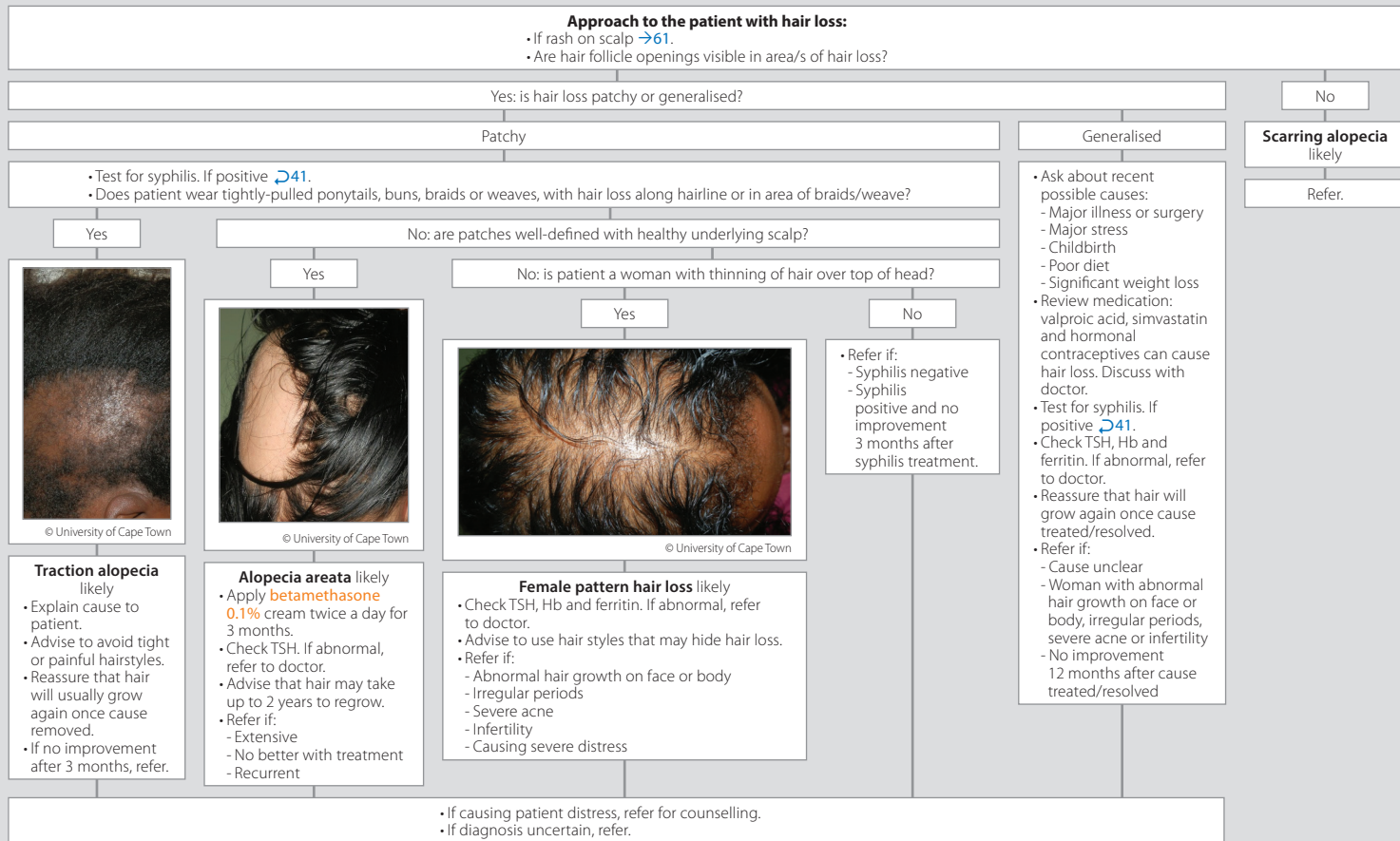


© BMJ Best Practice

- Folliculitis** likely
- Advise to wash with soap twice a day.
  - Wash scalp with **povidone iodine** solution once a day until lesions resolve.
  - If infection deep, extensive, recurrent or no response to above treatment:
    - Give **cloxacillin 500mg** 6 hourly for 10 days.
    - If penicillin allergy, give instead **clindamycin 300mg** 6 hourly for 10 days.
  - Test for HIV →77.

If diagnosis uncertain, discuss/refer.

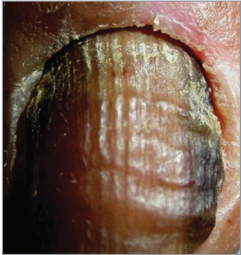
# Hair loss



# Nail symptoms

If nails long and dirty and patient unkempt, screen for mental health problem and abuse/neglect [↗68](#).

Disfigured nail with swollen nail bed and loss of cuticle



© University of Cape Town

## Chronic paronychia likely

Usually associated with excessive exposure to water and irritants like nail cosmetics, soaps and chemicals.

- Advise to avoid water and irritants or to wear gloves if unavoidable.
- Apply **betamethasone 0.1%** cream to swollen nail beds twice a day for 3 weeks.
- If no response, apply **miconazole 2%** cream twice a day for 4 weeks.
- If no response, refer.

Pain, redness and swelling of nail folds, there may be pus.



© BMJ Best Practice

## Acute paronychia likely

Often with history of trauma, such as nail biting or pushing the cuticle.

- Advise to avoid trauma to nail.
- If any pus, incise and drain.
- Advise warm saline soaks for 20 minutes twice a day.
- Apply **mupirocin 2%** cream after soaking.
- If severe pain, pus, infection beyond nail fold or temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$ , give **cloxacillin** 500mg 6 hourly for 7 days. If penicillin allergy, give instead **clindamycin** 300mg 6 hourly for 7 days.
- If no response, refer.

White/yellow disfigured nails



© University of Cape Town

## Fungal infection likely

- Test for HIV [↗77](#) and diabetes [↗89](#).
- Fungal nail infection is difficult to treat. Treat if:
  - Previous cellulitis on affected limb
  - Diabetes
  - Painful nail
  - Cosmetic concerns
- Send nail clippings for microscopy and culture to confirm diagnosis before starting treatment.
- If fungal infection confirmed, give **fluconazole** 150mg weekly until cure (can take up to 12 months).

Blue/brown/black discolouration of nail



CDC Public Health Image Library

Has there been recent trauma to nail?

Yes

- Haematoma likely**
- Treat if injury < 2 days old and painful:
    - Clean nail with **povidone iodine** solution.
    - Hold finger secure and gently twist a large bore needle into nail over centre of haematoma. Stop when blood drains through hole.
    - Cover with sterile gauze dressing.

No

- Psoriasis may discolour nails. If psoriasis on skin [↗55](#).
- Review medication: chloroquine, fluconazole, ibuprofen, lamivudine, phenytoin and zidovudine can cause discolouration of nails. Discuss with doctor.
- Refer same week to exclude melanoma (picture above) if:
  - New dark spot on 1 nail which is getting bigger quickly and no recent trauma
  - Discolouration extends into nail folds through hole.
  - Band on nail that is:
    - > 4mm wide
    - Getting darker or bigger
    - Has blurred edges
    - Nail is damaged.

# Self-harm or suicide

## Give urgent attention to the patient who has attempted or considered self-harm or suicide:

### Has patient attempted self-harm or suicide?

Yes

- First assess and manage airway, breathing, circulation and level of consciousness [10](#).
- If oral overdose or harmful substance in past 1 hour and patient fully conscious, give **activated charcoal** 100g in 500mL water via nasogastric tube. Avoid if paraffin, petrol, corrosive poisons, iron, lithium or alcohol.
- If opioid (morphine/codeine) overdose and respiratory rate < 12: give 100% face mask oxygen and **naloxone** 0.4mg IV immediately. Repeat every 2-3 minutes, increasing dose by 0.4mg each time until respiratory rate > 12, maximum 10mg.
- If exposed to carbon monoxide (exhaust fumes): give 100% face mask oxygen.
- If no response, or overdose/poisoning with other or unknown substance, discuss with specialist or local poison helpline.

- Remove any possible means of self-harm (firearms, knives, pills).
- If aggressive or violent, ensure safety: assess patient with other staff, use security personnel or police if needed. Sedate only if necessary [65](#).
- Refer urgently.
  - While awaiting transport, monitor closely. Avoid leaving patient alone. If patient refuses admission, consider involuntary admission [100](#).

### No: does patient have current thoughts or plans to commit suicide?

Yes

No: has patient had thoughts or plans of self-harm or suicide in past month or performed act of self-harm or suicide in past year?

Yes: is patient agitated, violent, distressed or uncommunicative?

No

Yes

No

**High risk of self-harm or suicide**

**Low risk of self-harm or suicide**  
Manage patient as below.

## Assess the patient whose risk of self-harm or suicide is low

Assess	When to assess	Note
Depression	Every visit	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either <a href="#">101</a> .
Alcohol/drug use	Every visit	In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk $\geq 4$ drinks/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any <a href="#">105</a> .
Other mental illness	Every visit	If hallucinations, delusions, disorganised speech, disorganised or catatonic behaviour, discuss with specialist same day.
Stressors	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assess and manage stress <a href="#">67</a>.</li> <li>• Help identify psychosocial stressors. Ask about trauma, sexual abuse/violence <a href="#">68</a>, family or relationship problems, financial difficulty, bereavement, chronic ill-health.</li> </ul>
Chronic condition	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If chronic pain, assess and manage pain <a href="#">45</a> and underlying condition. Link patient with helpline or support group.</li> <li>• If patient has a life-limiting illness, also consider giving palliative care <a href="#">122</a>.</li> </ul>

## Advise the patient whose risk of self-harm or suicide is low

- Discuss with patient reasons to stay alive. Encourage carers to closely monitor patient as long as risk persists and to bring patient back if any concerns.
- Advise patient and carers to restrict access to means of self-harm (remove firearms from house, keep medications and toxic substances locked away) as long as risk persists.
- Suggest patient seeks support from close relatives/friends and offer referral to counsellor or local mental health centre or helpline.

- Discharge into care of family, if possible. Review patient at least weekly for 2 months. If self-harm or suicide risk is still low follow up monthly.
- If thoughts or attempts of self-harm or suicide recur, reassess suicide risk above.

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

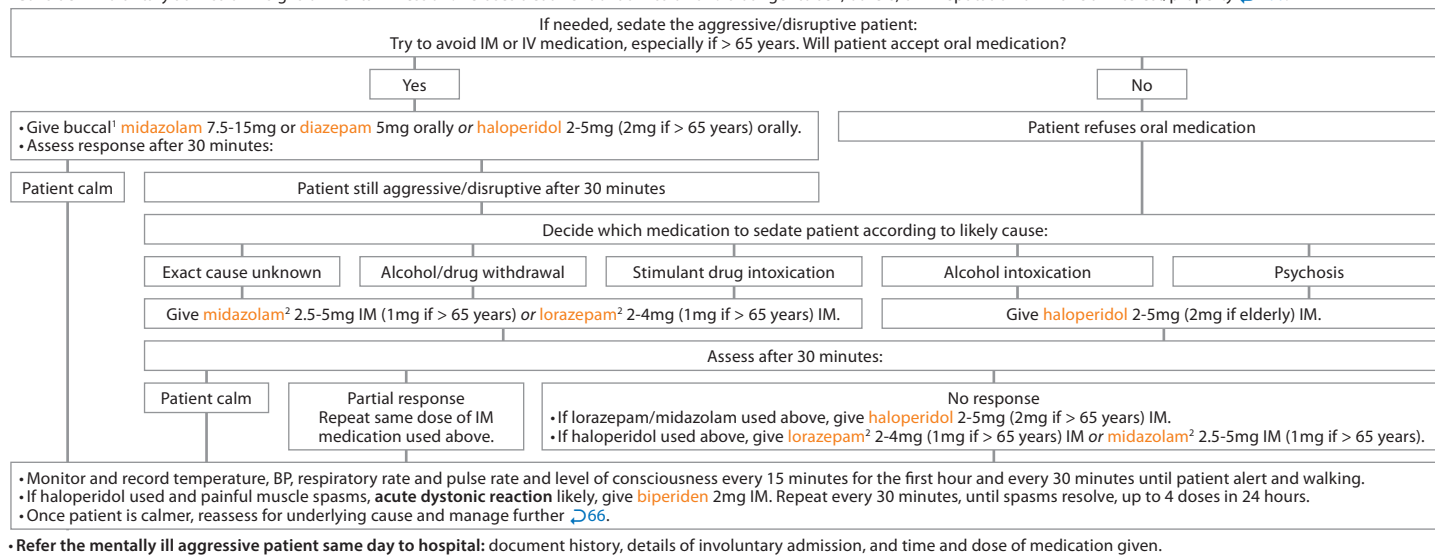


# Aggressive/disruptive patient

- Give urgent attention to the aggressive/disruptive patient with one or more of:**
- Angry behaviour
  - Loud, aggressive speech
  - Challenging, insulting or provocative behaviour
  - Frequently changing body position, pacing
  - Tense posturing like gripping arm rails tightly, clenching fists
  - Aggressive acts like pounding walls, throwing objects, hitting

## Management:

- Ensure the safety of yourself, the patient and those around you: ensure security personnel present, call police if needed. They should disarm patient if s/he has a weapon. Assess in a safe room with other staff. Ensure exit is not blocked.
- Try to verbally calm the patient:
  - Avoid direct eye contact, sudden movements and approaching patient from behind. Stand at least two arm's lengths away.
  - Use an honest, non-threatening manner. Avoid talking down to the patient, arguing or commanding him/her to calm down. Use a friendly gesture like offering a drink or food.
  - Listen to patient, identify his/her feelings and desires and offer choices. Take all threats seriously.
- Restrain and/or sedate only if absolutely needed: imminent harm to self/others, disruption of important treatment, damage to environment, verbal attempts to calm patient failed.
  - If possible, before sedation: assess and manage possible causes of abnormal thoughts or behaviour ↪66.
- Consider involuntary admission if signs of mental illness *and* refuses treatment or admission *and* a danger to self, others, own reputation or financial interest/property ↪100.



<sup>1</sup>To give a buccal dose, draw up correct dose midazolam in syringe, remove needle and give between cheek and gum. <sup>2</sup>If midazolam/lorazepam unavailable, give diazepam 5-10mg IV slowly (avoid IM).

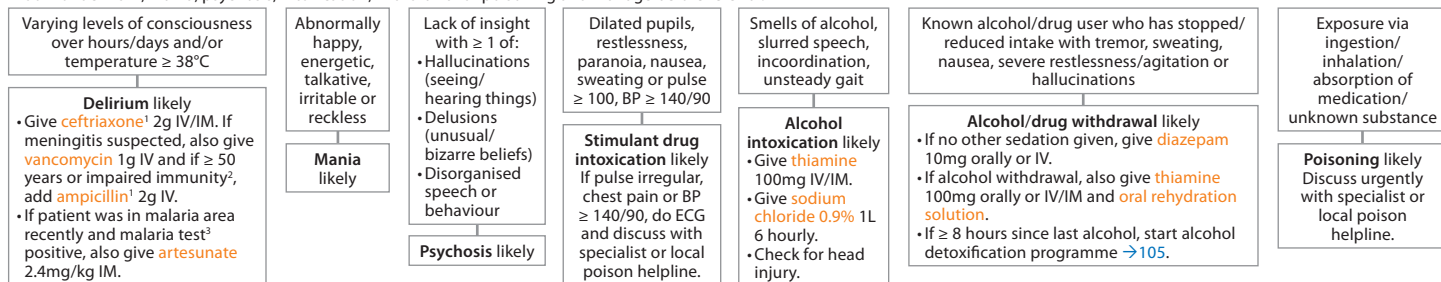
# Abnormal thoughts or behaviour

## Give urgent attention to the patient with abnormal thoughts or behaviour and one or more of:

- Sudden onset of abnormal thoughts or behaviour
- Recent onset of abnormal thoughts or behaviour

### Management:

- If aggressive/disruptive, assess and manage [↪65](#). Sedate only if absolutely needed.
- If new sudden asymmetric weakness or numbness of face, arm or leg; difficulty speaking or visual disturbance: consider **stroke** or **TIA** [→95](#).
- Just had a fit [→13](#).
- If difficulty breathing, respiratory rate > 30, oxygen saturation < 90% or oxygen saturation machine not available, give face mask oxygen.
- If glucose < 4mmol/L or unable to measure, give **oral glucose** 20g. If unable to take orally, give instead 25mL **glucose 50% IV** over 1-3 minutes. Repeat if glucose still < 4mmol/L after 15 minutes. Continue **glucose 5% 1L** 6 hourly IV. If known alcohol user, give **thiamine** 100mg IV before glucose. If glucose > 11mmol/L [→86](#).
- If first, dry mouth, poor skin turgor, sunken eyes, decreased urine: give **oral rehydration solution**. If unable to drink or BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- If suicidal thoughts or behaviour [↪64](#).
- Consider involuntary admission if signs of mental illness and refuses treatment or admission *and* a danger to self, others, own reputation or financial interest/property [↪100](#).
- Look for delirium, mania, psychosis, intoxication, withdrawal or poisoning and manage before referral:



### Refer urgently unless:

- Patient with known schizophrenia who is otherwise well: give routine schizophrenia care [↪106](#).
- Patient with known diabetes and low glucose, not on glicazide or insulin: if abnormal thoughts/behaviour resolve following oral or IV glucose, no need to refer, give routine diabetes care [↪90](#).
- Patient with known alcohol use who is otherwise well: if abnormal thoughts/behaviour resolve once sober, no need to refer [↪105](#).

## Approach to the patient with abnormal thoughts or behaviour not needing urgent attention

- If for at least 6 months  $\geq 1$  of: memory problems, disorientation, language difficulty, less able to cope with daily activities and work/social function: consider **dementia** [→108](#).
- If unsure of diagnosis, refer for further assessment.

<sup>1</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>Known with HIV or lymphoma, pregnant or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids. <sup>3</sup>Test for malaria with parasite slide microscopy or if unavailable, rapid diagnostic test.

# Stressed or miserable patient

## Give urgent attention to the stressed or miserable patient with:

- Suicidal thoughts or behaviour [▷64](#).

### Assess the stressed or miserable patient

Assess	Note
Anxiety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If excessive worry causes impaired function/distress for at least 6 months with <math>\geq 3</math> of: muscle tension, restlessness, irritability, difficulty sleeping, poor concentration, tiredness: <b>generalised anxiety disorder</b> likely <a href="#">▷102</a>.</li> <li>• If anxiety is induced by a particular situation/object (phobia) or is repeated sudden fear with physical symptoms and no obvious cause (panic), discuss/refer.</li> </ul>
Depression	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either <a href="#">▷101</a> .
Alcohol/drug use	In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk $\geq 4$ drinks*/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any <a href="#">▷105</a> .
Trauma/abuse	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Has the patient ever had a bad experience that is causing nightmares, flashbacks, avoidance of people/situations, jumpiness or a feeling of detachment? If yes <a href="#">▷68</a>.</li> <li>• If patient is being abused <a href="#">▷68</a>.</li> </ul>
Stressors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Help identify psychosocial stressors. Ask about family or relationship problems, financial difficulty, bereavement, chronic ill-health.</li> <li>• If patient has a life-limiting illness, also consider giving palliative care <a href="#">▷122</a>.</li> <li>• Ask about loneliness in older person and if available, refer to nearest social club in the area for older people.</li> </ul>
Women's health	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If recent delivery, give postnatal care <a href="#">▷118</a>.</li> <li>• If woman &gt; 40 years, ask about menopausal symptoms: hot flushes, night sweats, vaginal dryness, mood changes, difficulty sleeping and sexual problems <a href="#">▷121</a>.</li> </ul>
Medication	Review medication: prednisolone, efavirenz, metoprolol, metoclopramide, theophylline and contraceptives can cause mood changes. Discuss with doctor. Consider alternative contraceptive <a href="#">▷112</a> .

### Advise the stressed or miserable patient

- Encourage patient to question negative thinking and be realistic if s/he often predicts the worst, generalises, exaggerates problem, inappropriately takes the blame, takes things personally.
- Help the patient to choose strategies to get help and cope:

#### Get enough sleep

If patient has difficulty sleeping [▷69](#).



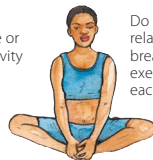
#### Encourage patient to take time to relax:



Spend time with supportive friends or family.



Find a creative or fun activity to do.



Do a relaxing breathing exercise each day.



#### Get active

Regular exercise may help.



#### Access support

Link patient with helpline or support group.

- Refer to available counsellor, psychiatric nurse/psychologist or social worker.
- If stressors identified, discuss possible solutions.
- Deal with bereavement issues if patient or family member has a life-limiting illness or if patient is recently bereaved:
  - Acknowledge grief reactions: denial, disbelief, confusion, shock, sadness, bargaining, yearning, anger, humiliation, despair, guilt and acceptance.
  - Allow patient/family to share sorrow and talk of memories, the meaning of the patient's life or religious beliefs. Suggest connecting with a spiritual counsellor as appropriate.
  - Identify worrying issues (e.g. child care, will and funeral arrangements) and who can give practical support with these before and after the patient dies.
- For tips on how to communicate effectively [▷126](#).

**Offer to review the patient in 1 month. If no better, discuss with specialist.**

\*One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Traumatised/abused patient

## Give urgent attention to the traumatised/abused patient with one or more of:

- Injuries needing attention [12](#)
- Immediate risk of being harmed and in need of shelter
- Suicidal thoughts or behaviour [64](#)
- Recent sexual assault:
  - If severe vaginal or anal bleeding, refer urgently.
  - Arrange same day doctor assessment.
  - Aim to prevent HIV, hepatitis B, STIs and pregnancy urgently:

Prevent HIV and hepatitis B [70](#).

### Prevent STIs

- Give single dose each of **ceftriaxone** 250mg IM, **azithromycin** 1g orally and **metronidazole**<sup>1</sup> 2g orally.
- If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), omit ceftriaxone and increase **azithromycin** dose to 2g orally.

### Prevent pregnancy

- Do pregnancy test. If pregnant [114](#).
- If not pregnant, not on reliable contraception and  $\leq 5$  days since rape, give emergency contraception:
  - Give single dose **levonorgestrel** 1.5mg<sup>2</sup> orally. If patient vomits < 2 hours after taking, repeat dose or
  - Insert **copper intrauterine device** instead [112](#).

Also assess and support the patient needing urgent attention as below.

## Assess the traumatised/abused patient

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	Manage symptoms as on symptom pages. Ask about genital symptoms even if no recent sexual assault <a href="#">35</a> .
Family planning	Every visit	Assess patient's contraception needs <a href="#">112</a> . If pregnant <a href="#">114</a> .
Mental health	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assess and manage stress <a href="#">67</a>.</li> <li>• In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either <a href="#">101</a>.</li> <li>• In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk <math>\geq 4</math> drinks<sup>3</sup>/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any <a href="#">105</a>.</li> <li>• If patient has ever had an experience so horrible that s/he has had <math>\geq 3</math> of the following for &gt; 1 month: 1) Nightmares or involuntary thoughts/flashbacks 2) Avoided certain situations/people 3) Been constantly on guard, watchful or easily startled 4) Felt numb or detached from other people, activities or surroundings: <b>post-traumatic stress disorder</b> likely, refer.</li> </ul>
HIV	First visit	Test for HIV <a href="#">77</a> .
Syphilis (if sexual assault)	If negative: repeat at 6 weeks, 3 months	If positive <a href="#">41</a> .

## Advise the traumatised/abused patient

- Find a quiet place to talk. Comfort patient, remind him/her that you are there to help. Reassure that s/he is safe and all information is confidential. Allow a trusted friend/relative to stay close.
- Be patient, listen attentively and avoid pressuring the patient. Clearly record patient's story in his/her own words. Include nature of assault and, if possible, identity of the perpetrator.
- Ask if patient has specific needs/concerns and link with support structures. Refer to available trauma counsellor/psychiatric nurse/psychologist/social worker/helpline.
- Encourage patient to report case to the police and to apply for protection order. Respect patient's wishes if s/he declines to do so.

## Review the traumatised/abused patient

- If sexually assaulted, review within 3 days [71](#). Also check syphilis at 6 weeks and 3 months.
- Offer to review the traumatised/abused patient who has not been sexually assaulted in 1 month.

<sup>1</sup>Advise no alcohol until 24 hours after metronidazole. <sup>2</sup>If patient taking ART, rifampicin or phenytoin, offer **copper intrauterine device** instead or increase single dose **levonorgestrel** to 3mg. <sup>3</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Difficulty sleeping

## Assess the patient with difficulty sleeping

- Confirm that the patient really is getting insufficient sleep. Adults need on average 6-8 hours sleep per night. This decreases with age.
- Determine the type of sleep difficulty: waking too early or frequently, difficulty falling asleep, insufficient sleep.

### Exclude medical problems:

- Ask about pain, difficulty breathing, urinary problems. See relevant symptom pages. If patient has a chronic condition, give routine care.
- If persistent snoring [↪24](#). If restless legs, refer for further assessment.
- If pulse  $\geq 100$ , weight loss, palpitations, tremor, dislike of hot weather or thyroid enlargement, check TSH. If abnormal, refer to doctor.

### Review medication:

- Over-the-counter decongestants, salbutamol, theophylline, fluoxetine and efavirenz can cause difficulty sleeping. Discuss with doctor.
- Reassure patient that difficulty sleeping from efavirenz is usually self-limiting and resolves within 4 weeks on ART. If > 4 weeks, discuss with doctor.

### Assess alcohol/drug use:

- In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk  $\geq 4$  drinks<sup>1</sup>/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any [↪105](#).

### Screen for possible stressors and mental health problem:

- Assess and manage stress [↪67](#).
- Has the patient ever had a bad experience that is causing nightmares, flashbacks, avoidance of people/situations, jumpiness or a feeling of detachment? If yes [↪68](#).
- In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either [↪101](#).
- If abnormal thoughts or behaviour [↪66](#).
- If for at least 6 months  $\geq 1$  of: memory problems, disorientation, language difficulty, less able to cope with daily activities and work/social function: consider dementia [↪108](#).

### Ask about menopausal symptoms:

- If woman > 40 years, ask about menopausal symptoms: hot flushes, night sweats, vaginal dryness, mood changes and sexual problems [↪121](#).

## Advise the patient with difficulty sleeping

- Encourage patient to adopt sensible sleep habits. These often help to resolve a sleep problem without the use of sedatives.
  - Get regular exercise.
  - Avoid caffeine (coffee, tea, sweetened fizzy drinks), alcohol and smoking for several hours before bedtime.
  - Avoid day-time napping. If very tired, nap for no longer than 30 minutes.
  - Encourage routine: get up at the same time every day (even if tired) and go to bed at the same time every evening.
  - Allow time to unwind/relax before bed.
  - Use bed only for sleeping and sex. Spend only 6-8 hours a night in bed.
  - Once in bed, avoid clock-watching. If not asleep after 20 minutes, get out of bed and do a low energy activity (read a book, walk around house). Once tired, return to bed.
  - Keep a sleep diary. Review this at each visit.
- Review the patient regularly. A good relationship between clinician and patient can help.

**Refer for further assessment if problems with daytime functioning, daytime sleepiness, irritability, anxiety or headaches that do not get better with 1 month of sensible sleep habits.**

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Exposed to infectious fluid: post-exposure prophylaxis

Fluids transmit infection through sexual contact (assault or consensual, burst condom), occupational exposure (sharps injury, splash to eye, mouth, nose or broken skin), human bite, sharing needles, contact with used condom and exposure to blood in sport or at accident scene.

## Give urgent attention to the patient exposed to infectious fluid:

- Does patient have one or more of the following?
- Exposure to blood, blood-stained fluid/tissue, pleural/pericardial/peritoneal/amniotic/synovial/cerebrospinal fluid, vaginal secretions, semen or breast milk
  - Human bite that broke the skin

Yes

No

Was there sexual contact, sharps injury, splash to eye, mouth, nose or broken skin?

Yes

No

- Give immediate attention:
  - If broken skin, clean area immediately with soap and water.
  - If splash to eye, mouth or nose, immediately rinse mouth/nose or irrigate eye thoroughly with water or **sodium chloride 0.9%**.
  - If sexual assault →68.
- Assess need for HIV post-exposure prophylaxis:

- Reassure that HIV and hepatitis B transmission is unlikely.
- Avoid giving HIV or hepatitis B post-exposure prophylaxis.
- If unsure, discuss with specialist.

Patient known HIV positive

Positive

Negative

One positive and one negative

Patient refuses HIV test.

Patient HIV negative or unknown: do HIV rapid test →77.

- Send blood for HBsAg, hepatitis C antibody and:
  - If newly diagnosed HIV: HIV ELISA.
  - If sexual exposure: syphilis.
- Avoid giving HIV post-exposure prophylaxis, give routine HIV care →78.

- Give HIV post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP) only if ≤ 72 hours since exposure (ideally within 1 hour):
  - Give **tenofovir/emtricitabine** 300/200mg *and* **atazanavir/ritonavir**<sup>1</sup> 300/100mg once daily for 28 days.
  - If known kidney disease, give **zidovudine/lamivudine** 300/150mg 12 hourly instead of tenofovir/emtricitabine.
  - If source on ART, start PEP as above and refer/discuss same day with experienced ART doctor to adjust PEP if needed.
- Send blood for HIV ELISA, HBsAg, hepatitis C antibody and eGFR<sup>2</sup>. If sexual exposure, also check syphilis.

Assess need for hepatitis B post-exposure prophylaxis: has patient received 3 doses of hepatitis B vaccine?

Yes

No or not sure

Send blood for HBsAb titre.

Give 1st dose of **hepatitis B vaccine** 1mL IM.

Assess source: if s/he agrees, send blood for HIV ELISA, HBsAg and hepatitis C antibody. If sexual exposure, check syphilis.

Review patient and blood results within 3 days →71.

<sup>1</sup>If atazanavir/ritonavir not available, give instead **lopinavir/ritonavir** 400/100mg 12 hourly. If on rifampicin, discuss with specialist. <sup>2</sup>If giving zidovudine, check full blood count instead of eGFR.

# Review the patient on post-exposure prophylaxis

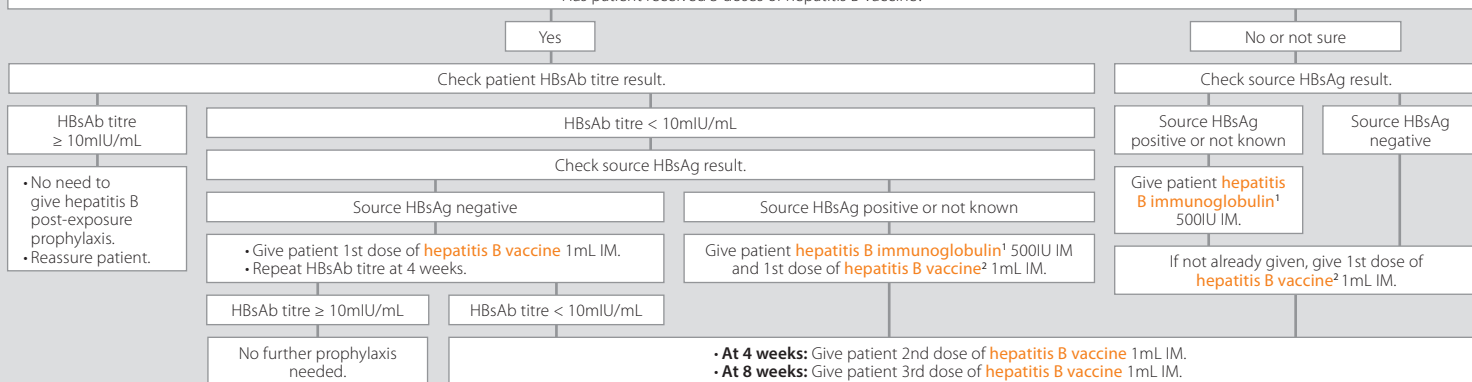
## Review patient within 3 days, at 2 weeks, 6 weeks, 3 months and 6 months.

- Check adherence and ask about side effects from HIV post-exposure prophylaxis [↪82](#). Advise patient to report side effects promptly if they occur.
- Advise patient to use condoms for 3 months until results confirmed.
- If assault or abuse [↪68](#).
- Check bloods according to table and review results as below:

Assess	When to assess	Note
HIV ELISA	If negative: at 6 weeks, 3 months	If positive, stop HIV post-exposure prophylaxis and give routine HIV care <a href="#">↪78</a> .
HBsAg	If negative: at 6 months	If positive, refer. If negative, manage as below.
Hepatitis C antibody	If negative: at 6 weeks, 3 months	If positive, refer.
Syphilis (if sexual exposure)	If negative: repeat at 6 weeks, 3 months	If positive <a href="#">↪41</a> .
eGFR	If on tenofovir: at 2 weeks, 6 weeks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If initial eGFR &lt; 50mL/min: stop tenofovir/emtricitabine, give instead <b>zidovudine/lamivudine</b> 300/150mg 12 hourly and check full blood count.</li> <li>• If repeat eGFR &lt; 50mL/min: discuss with specialist.</li> </ul>
Full blood count	If on zidovudine: at 2 weeks, 6 weeks	If Hb < 7g/dL or neutrophils < 0.75 x 10 <sup>9</sup> /L, discuss with specialist.
Source blood results (if done)	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If HIV ELISA negative, discuss with specialist if patient should continue HIV post-exposure prophylaxis. If HIV ELISA positive, give routine HIV care <a href="#">↪78</a>.</li> <li>• If HBsAg or hepatitis C antibody positive, refer.</li> <li>• If syphilis positive <a href="#">↪41</a>.</li> </ul>

## Approach to the patient who is HBsAg negative

Has patient received 3 doses of hepatitis B vaccine?



<sup>1</sup>If giving both hepatitis B vaccine and immunoglobulin, give at different sites. <sup>2</sup>If patient previously completed 2 courses of hepatitis B vaccine (6 doses in total), omit the vaccine and give instead a 2nd dose of **hepatitis B immunoglobulin** 500IU IM at 4 weeks.

# Tuberculosis (TB): diagnosis

Check for TB in the patient with any of the following: cough  $\geq$  2 weeks, weight loss, drenching night sweats, fever  $\geq$  2 weeks, chest pain on breathing, blood-stained sputum.

## Give urgent attention to the TB suspect with one or more of:

- Respiratory rate  $>$  30
- Breathless at rest or while talking
- Confusion or agitation
- Coughs  $\geq$  1 tablespoon fresh blood

## Management:

- Give **ceftriaxone**<sup>1</sup> 1g IV/IM. If unavailable, discuss with doctor.
- Give face mask oxygen.
- Take 1 spot sputum specimen for Xpert MTB/RIF and arrange follow-up.
- Refer same day.

## Start the workup to diagnose TB:

- Test for HIV [↗77](#).
- Send 1 spot sputum specimen for Xpert MTB/RIF and ask patient to return for result within 2 days.
- If patient has chest pain on breathing or coughs blood without sputum, also arrange chest x-ray and doctor review (see below).

### Xpert negative (MTB not detected)

- If fever or coughing sputum, give **doxycycline** 100mg 12 hourly for 5 days. If risk of severe infection ( $>$  65 years, alcohol abuse or impaired immunity<sup>3</sup>) also give **amoxicillin**<sup>4</sup> 1g 8 hourly.
- Manage according to HIV status. Encourage patient who has not tested to do so [↗77](#).

HIV positive

HIV negative  
TB is unlikely.

Advise patient to return if no better or symptoms worsen.

Send 2nd (ideally early morning) sputum specimen for Xpert MTB/RIF.

### Xpert positive (MTB detected)

#### Rifampicin resistant

Send a 2nd sputum specimen for smear, culture and DST<sup>2</sup>.

#### Diagnose Drug-Resistant TB

Refer for DR-TB treatment.

#### Rifampicin sensitive

#### Diagnose Drug-Sensitive TB

- Give routine DS-TB care and start DS-TB treatment same day [→74](#).
- Register as a bacteriologically confirmed TB case.

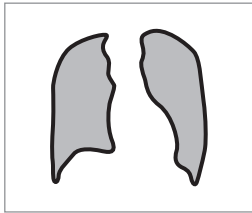
### Xpert negative (MTB not detected)

- Send for chest-x-ray and doctor review.
- If HIV positive, also send sputum specimen for culture and DST<sup>2</sup>.

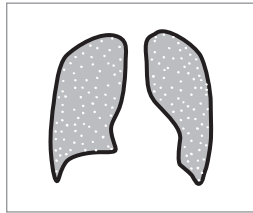
<sup>1</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>Drug susceptibility testing. <sup>3</sup>Known with HIV, diabetes or cancer, pregnant or receiving chemotherapy or corticosteroids. <sup>4</sup>If severe penicillin allergy (previous angioedema, anaphylaxis or urticaria), discuss with doctor.



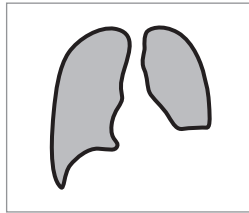
Doctor to review chest x-ray.



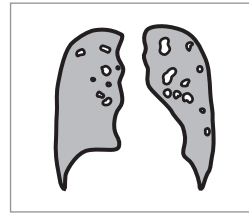
Intrathoracic lymphadenopathy



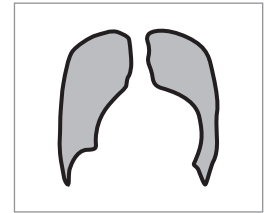
Miliary TB



Pleural effusion  
Confirm with pleural tap.



Any lung opacification/s  
in HIV patient



Pericardial effusion  
Confirm with ultrasound.

Doctor decision about chest x-ray

Chest x-ray similar to x-ray above

#### Diagnose TB on chest x-ray.

Give routine TB care and start DS-TB treatment same day →74.

Chest x-ray normal or different to above or unsure

- Look for extra-pulmonary TB. If diagnosed, give routine TB care →74:
- If patient has abdominal pain, swelling or diarrhoea refer for further investigation.
- If patient has headache, refer for lumbar puncture.
- If patient has lymphnode  $\geq 2$ cm, aspirate for TB and cytology →16.
- Look for other cause of cough, especially for pneumocystis pneumonia (PJP) in the HIV patient →28.

Review culture result if sent.

Culture positive (MTB confirmed)

Drug sensitive

#### Diagnose Drug-Sensitive TB

- If chest x-ray normal, doctor to review.
- Give routine DS-TB care and start DS-TB treatment same day →74.

Drug resistant

#### Diagnose Drug-Resistant TB

Refer for DR-TB treatment.

Culture negative or pending

- If symptoms persist, refer to specialist.
- If culture negative and symptoms resolve, advise to return if symptoms recur.

# Drug-sensitive (DS) TB: routine care

## Assess the patient with DS-TB at diagnosis, at 2 weeks and then once a month throughout DS-TB treatment.

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If respiratory rate &gt; 30, breathless at rest or while talking, or confused/agitated, give urgent attention →72.</li> <li>• Expect gradual improvement on TB treatment. <b>If symptoms worsen or do not improve, refer to doctor.</b></li> </ul>
Contacts	At diagnosis and if contact symptomatic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Screen symptomatic household and work contacts for TB.</li> <li>• Exclude TB and give 6 months IPT to asymptomatic contacts &lt; 5 years of age.</li> </ul>
Family planning	Every visit	Assess contraception needs to avoid pregnancy during treatment →112. Avoid oral contraceptive and use subdermal implant <sup>1</sup> with caution while on TB treatment.
Adherence	Every visit	Check adherence on the TB card. Manage the patient who interrupts TB treatment →76.
Side effects	Every visit	Ask about side effects on treatment →75.
Alcohol/drug use	At diagnosis; if adherence poor	In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk ≥ 4 drinks <sup>2</sup> /session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any →105.
Weight (BMI)	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Expect weight gain on treatment and adjust TB treatment dose accordingly →75. <b>If losing weight, refer same week to doctor.</b></li> <li>• BMI = weight (kg) ÷ height (m) ÷ height (m). If BMI &lt; 18.5, refer for nutritional support.</li> </ul>
Chest x-ray	Not routinely, only if needed	Repeat chest x-ray at 2 months if Xpert negative and diagnosed on x-ray, patient deteriorates or coughs blood.
Glucose	At diagnosis	Check glucose →89.
HIV	At diagnosis or if status unknown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Test for HIV →77. If HIV positive and not already on ART, start ART once tolerating TB treatment →78:</li> <li>• If CD4 ≤ 50 cells/mm<sup>3</sup> or stage 4, start ART within 2 weeks. If TB meningitis, start ART after 4-6 weeks of TB treatment.</li> <li>• If CD4 &gt; 50 cells/mm<sup>3</sup> and not stage 4, start ART between 2-8 weeks of TB treatment.</li> </ul>
Send 1 early morning sputum specimen for smear	Week 8, end of month 5 and month 6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If smear negative at 8 weeks, change to continuation phase.</li> <li>• If smear positive at 8 weeks, manage as on 8 week smear positive algorithm →76.</li> </ul>
Culture and DST <sup>3</sup>	If sent during diagnostic workup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If culture confirms MTB (<i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i>) check DST:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If drug sensitive, continue treatment.</li> <li>- If drug resistant, diagnose DR-TB, stop DS-TB treatment and refer for DR-TB treatment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If culture does not confirm MTB, discuss with doctor.</li> </ul>
Treatment outcome	6 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If month 5 and month 6 sputa were smear negative, stop TB treatment and register as <b>cured</b>.</li> <li>• If month 5 or month 6 sputum was smear positive, repeat sputum smear.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If repeat smear positive, register as <b>treatment failure</b> and refer for doctor review.</li> <li>- If repeat smear negative, discuss with experienced TB doctor.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If unable to produce sputum, register as <b>treatment completed</b>.</li> </ul>

Advise and treat the patient with TB →75.

<sup>1</sup>If patient already has subdermal implant, advise to use condoms consistently and offer switch to IUD. <sup>2</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer. <sup>3</sup>Drug susceptibility testing

### Advise the patient with TB

- Arrange TB/HIV education and refer for community or workplace adherence support.
- Support the patient with poor adherence. Educate on adherence and the dangers of resistance and arrange adherence support. If treatment interrupted [↗76](#).
- Educate patient about TB treatment side effects below and to report these promptly if they occur.
- Advise patient s/he can return to work after 2 weeks.
- Advise the patient misusing alcohol and/or using illegal or misusing prescription or over-the-counter medication to stop. Alcohol/drug misuse interferes with recovery and adherence [↗105](#). If patient smokes tobacco [↗104](#). Support patient to change [↗127](#).

### Treat the patient with TB

- Treat the patient with TB 7 days a week for 6 months:
  - Give intensive phase **RHZE** for 8 weeks.
  - Change to continuation phase **RH** at 8 weeks to complete 6 months of TB treatment. If sputum smear positive at 8 weeks, manage further [↗76](#).
- If TB meningitis, TB spine or tuberculous pus collection, treat for at least 9 months, guided by a specialist.
- Dose TB treatment according to weight and adjust as weight increases. **If losing weight, refer to doctor.**
- Give **pyridoxine** 25mg daily until treatment completed.

	Intensive phase: 8 weeks	Continuation phase: 4 months
Weight	<b>RHZE</b> (150/75/400/275)	<b>RH</b>
30-37kg	2 tablets	2 tablets (150/75)
38-54kg	3 tablets	3 tablets (150/75)
55-70kg	4 tablets	2 tablets (300/150)
≥ 71kg	5 tablets	2 tablets (300/150)

R - rifampicin

H - isoniazid

Z - pyrazinamide

E - ethambutol

### Manage the TB/HIV co-infected patient:

- If TB diagnosed while patient on IPT, stop IPT and start TB treatment.
- Avoid starting nevirapine with DS-TB treatment. If already on nevirapine, consider switching medication [↗81](#).
- Avoid rifampicin with lopinavir/ritonavir and atazanavir/ritonavir. If patient on/starting lopinavir/ritonavir or atazanavir/ritonavir, discuss with specialist about switching rifampicin to rifabutin.

### Look for and manage TB treatment side effects

Jaundice and vomiting	Most TB medications	Stop all medications and refer same day.
Skin rash/itch	Most TB medications	Assess and manage <a href="#">↗53</a> .
Loss of colour vision	Ethambutol	Refer same day.

Nausea/poor appetite	Rifampicin	Take treatment at night. Give <b>metoclopramide</b> 10mg 8 hourly up to 5 days.
Joint pain	Pyrazinamide	Give <b>ibuprofen</b> 400mg 8 hourly up to 5 days (avoid if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease).
Orange urine	Rifampicin	Reassure.
Burning feet	Isoniazid	Increase <b>pyridoxine</b> to 75mg daily.

Review the patient with DS-TB at diagnosis, at 2 weeks and then once a month throughout DS-TB treatment.

### Manage the patient with a positive 8 week sputum smear

- Look for explanation for result: ask about alcohol/drug use ↗105, stress ↗67 and side effects. Give increased adherence support and educate the patient about the risks of poor adherence ↗75.
- Send 1 sputum specimen for DST<sup>1</sup>. Indicate on the request form that the patient's 8 week sputum is smear positive. Review results in 5 days:

Drug sensitive or DST not available

Drug resistant

- Change to continuation phase.
- At 12 weeks, send 1 sputum specimen for smear.

- Diagnose DR-TB
- Refer for DR-TB treatment.

Smear positive

- Smear negative
- Continue DS-TB treatment continuation phase.

- Send 1 sputum specimen for culture and DST<sup>1</sup>.
- Refer to TB doctor.

At the end of month 5 and month 6, send 1 sputum specimen for smear.

Smear positive  
Repeat sputum smear.

- Smear negative
- Stop treatment at 6 months.
  - Register as **cured**.

Positive  
Register as **treatment failure**.

Negative

Discuss with experienced TB doctor.

### Manage the patient who interrupts TB treatment

- Trace the patient and look for explanation for treatment interruption. Ask about alcohol/drug use ↗105, stress ↗67 and side effects.
- Give increased adherence support and educate the patient about the risks of poor adherence ↗75.
- Manage treatment interruption according to duration of interruption:

Interrupted for  
< 1 month

Interrupted for 1-2 months

Interrupted for ≥ 2 months

- Send sputum for Xpert MTB/RIF.
- Continue treatment while awaiting results.

- Register patient as **lost to follow up**.
- Send sputum for smear, culture and DST<sup>1</sup>.
- Start TB treatment only if patient is unwell, otherwise wait for results.

Sensitive

Resistant

Positive smear or culture

Negative smear  
and culture and  
patient well

- Continue TB treatment.
- Ensure patient makes up missed doses.

Refer for  
DR-TB treatment.

- Restart full course of DS-TB treatment.
- Review DST result.

Sensitive

Resistant

Doctor to decide if  
to restart treatment  
or to give no more  
TB treatment and  
monitor monthly.

Complete full course of DS-TB treatment.

Refer for DR-TB treatment.

<sup>1</sup>Drug susceptibility testing

# HIV: diagnosis

**Encourage the patient and his/her partner to test for HIV.**

## Obtain informed consent

- Educate patient about HIV, methods of HIV transmission, risk factors, treatment and benefits of knowing one's HIV status.
- Explain test procedure and that it is completely voluntary.
- If consent is granted, proceed to testing immediately.

## Test

Do first rapid HIV test on finger-prick blood.

Positive

Negative

Do a confirmatory<sup>1</sup> rapid HIV test on finger-prick blood.

Positive

Negative

Repeat both the first and the confirmatory rapid HIV tests above.

Both tests positive

One positive and one negative

Both tests negative

Patient has HIV.

Send blood for an HIV ELISA test.

ELISA positive

ELISA negative

Inconclusive result

HIV test result negative

- Give routine HIV care at this visit →78.
- Offer to help disclose status to sexual partner/s.
- Encourage HIV testing for sexual partners and children.
- Refer for community care worker support.

Repeat rapid HIV tests above after 14 days.

Was patient at risk of HIV infection in the past 4 weeks (new or multiple sexual partners, or unprotected sex)?

Yes

No

- Repeat HIV test after 4 weeks.
- Encourage patient to follow safe sex practices.

- Patient does not have HIV.
- Encourage patient to remain negative and advise when to re-test:
  - If sexually active: yearly
  - If pregnant: at 32 weeks
- Offer referral for male circumcision to diminish risk of HIV infection.

## Support

Ensure patient understands test result and knows where and when to access further care.

<sup>1</sup>Use a different rapid test for the confirmatory test.

# HIV: routine care

Assess the patient with HIV			
Assess	When to assess	Note	
Symptoms	Every visit	Manage patient's symptoms as on symptom pages. If TB symptoms <a href="#">↗72</a> or genital symptoms <a href="#">↗35</a> .	
TB	Every visit	If cough, weight loss, night sweats or fever, exclude TB <a href="#">↗72</a> . Start ART after TB has been excluded.	
Adherence	Every visit	Check record of attendance. If poor adherence/attendance, give increased adherence support.	
Side effects	Every visit	Ask about side effects from ART <a href="#">↗82</a> , isoniazid preventive therapy (IPT) <a href="#">↗80</a> , co-trimoxazole <a href="#">↗80</a> and fluconazole <a href="#">↗80</a> .	
Mental health	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either <a href="#">↗101</a>.</li> <li>• In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk <math>\geq 4</math> drinks/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any <a href="#">↗105</a>.</li> <li>• If <math>\geq 1</math> of: memory/co-ordination problems, disorientation, language difficulty, less able to cope with daily activities and work/social function: consider dementia <a href="#">↗108</a>.</li> </ul>	
CVD risk	At diagnosis	Assess the patient's CVD risk <a href="#">↗87</a> .	
Sexual health	Every visit	Ask about sexual orientation, risky behaviour (patient or partner has new or $> 1$ partner, unreliable condom use or risky alcohol/drug use <a href="#">↗105</a> ) and sexual problems <a href="#">↗43</a> .	
Family planning	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Advise reliable<sup>2</sup> contraception (IUD, injectable or sterilisation <i>plus</i> condoms) <a href="#">↗112</a>.</li> <li>• If planning pregnancy, advise patient to use contraception until viral load <math>&lt; 1000</math> copies/mL.</li> </ul>	
PMTCT	If pregnant or breastfeeding	If not on ART, start ART same week. If pregnant, give antenatal care <a href="#">↗116</a> .	
Palliative care	If deteriorating	If patient deteriorating on ART or failing 3rd line ART, also consider giving palliative care <a href="#">↗122</a> .	
Weight (BMI)	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If weight loss <math>\geq 5\%</math> of body weight in 4 weeks <a href="#">↗14</a>. If weight <math>&lt; 40</math> kg and on efavirenz, adjust dose <a href="#">↗82</a>.</li> <li>• If BMI <math>&lt; 18.5</math>, refer for nutritional support. BMI = weight (kg) <math>\div</math> height (m) <math>\div</math> height (m).</li> </ul>	
Stage	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check weight, mouth, skin, previous and current problems.</li> <li>• If stage 3 or 4: give co-trimoxazole and prioritise patient for ART.</li> <li>• If clinical stage worsens while patient on ART, refer to doctor.</li> </ul>	
Stage 1	Stage 2	Stage 3	Stage 4
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No symptoms</li> <li>• Persistent painless swollen glands</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Recurrent sinusitis, tonsillitis, otitis media, pharyngitis</li> <li>• Papular pruritic eruption (PPE)</li> <li>• Fungal nail infections</li> <li>• Herpes zoster (shingles)</li> <li>• Recurrent mouth ulcers</li> <li>• Angular cheilitis</li> <li>• Unexplained weight loss <math>&lt; 10\%</math> body weight</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pulmonary TB</li> <li>• Oral candida</li> <li>• Oral hairy leukoplakia</li> <li>• Unexplained weight loss <math>\geq 10\%</math> body weight</li> <li>• Unexplained diarrhoea <math>&gt; 1</math> month</li> <li>• Unexplained fever <math>&gt; 1</math> month</li> <li>• Severe bacterial infections (pneumonia, meningitis)</li> <li>• Unexplained anaemia <math>&lt; 8</math>g/dL, neutropaenia <math>&lt; 0.5 \times 10^9/L</math>, or chronic thrombocytopenia <math>&lt; 50 \times 10^9/L</math></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Extrapulmonary TB</li> <li>• Weight loss <math>\geq 10\%</math> and diarrhoea or fever <math>&gt; 1</math> month</li> <li>• Pneumocystis pneumonia (PJP)</li> <li>• Recurrent severe bacterial pneumonia</li> <li>• Herpes simplex of mouth or genital area <math>&gt; 1</math> month</li> <li>• Oesophageal candida</li> <li>• Kaposi's sarcoma, lymphoma, invasive cervical cancer</li> <li>• Cytomegalovirus infection</li> <li>• Toxoplasmosis</li> <li>• HIV-associated dementia, encephalopathy</li> <li>• Cryptococcal disease (including meningitis)</li> <li>• <i>Cryptosporidium</i> or <i>Isosporidia belli</i> diarrhoea</li> </ul>
Tuberculin skin test (TST)	If no current or previous IPT and no TB symptoms	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clean arm with alcohol swab, pull skin taut and inject 2 units PPD-RT23 or 5 units PPD-S into skin to see wheal develop. Measure swelling after 48-72 hours:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If <math>\geq 5</math>mm: TST is positive, give IPT.</li> <li>- If <math>&lt; 5</math>mm: TST is negative, avoid IPT.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If TST unavailable, give IPT and check TST when available.</li> </ul>	
Cervical screen	When needed	Do cervical screen <a href="#">↗40</a> .	

Continue to assess the patient with HIV [↗79](#).

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer. <sup>2</sup>The oral contraceptive and implant may be less effective on ART. Advise the patient on ART choosing to continue with oral contraceptive or implant to use condoms as well.

### Continue to assess the patient with HIV

Do blood tests at diagnosis, before starting ART and regularly on ART:

At diagnosis	Starting/changing ART regimen	3 months	6 months	1 year	6 monthly	Yearly
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Syphilis</li> <li>HBsAg, Hepatitis C antibody</li> <li>CD4</li> <li>Cryptococcal antigen if CD4 <math>\leq 100</math>cells/mm<sup>3</sup></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Starting TDF:</b> eGFR or creatinine<sup>1</sup></li> <li><b>Changing from TDF:</b> HBsAg</li> <li><b>Starting AZT:</b> Hb+diff</li> <li><b>Starting NVP:</b> ALT</li> <li><b>Starting LPV/r:</b> cholesterol, triglycerides</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>TDF:</b> eGFR or creatinine<sup>1</sup></li> <li><b>AZT:</b> Hb+diff</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Viral load</li> <li>CD4</li> <li><b>TDF:</b> eGFR or creatinine<sup>1</sup></li> <li><b>AZT:</b> Hb+diff</li> <li><b>LPV/r:</b> cholesterol, triglycerides</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Viral load</li> <li>CD4</li> <li><b>TDF:</b> eGFR or creatinine<sup>1</sup></li> <li><b>AZT:</b> Hb+diff</li> <li><b>LPV/r:</b> cholesterol, triglycerides</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>TDF:</b> eGFR or creatinine<sup>1</sup></li> <li><b>AZT:</b> Hb+diff</li> <li><b>LPV/r:</b> cholesterol, triglycerides</li> <li><b>NVP:</b> ALT</li> </ul>	Viral load
HBsAg - hepatitis B surface antigen		TDF - tenofovir	AZT - zidovudine	Hb+diff - haemoglobin and differential	NVP - nevirapine	LPV/r - lopinavir/ritonavir

### Review results of routine blood tests

Assess	When to assess	Note
Syphilis	At diagnosis	If positive <a href="#">↪41</a> .
Hepatitis	At diagnosis and if changing from TDF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If HBsAg or hepatitis C antibody positive, refer to doctor.</li> <li>If changing regimen: if HBsAg positive, continue tenofovir as a 4th medication (avoid stopping tenofovir) and refer to doctor.</li> </ul>
CD4	At diagnosis and 6 monthly until stable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start ART regardless of CD4, especially if CD4 <math>\leq 350</math>cells/mm<sup>3</sup>.</li> <li>If CD4 <math>\leq 350</math>cells/mm<sup>3</sup>, also give co-trimoxazole.</li> <li>Stop CD4 checks after 1 year on ART if stable: if 2 consecutive viral loads <math>&lt; 1000</math>copies/mL and patient well.</li> </ul>
Cryptococcal antigen	At diagnosis if CD4 $\leq 100$ cells/mm <sup>3</sup>	If cryptococcal antigen positive: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If symptomatic, (headache, confusion), refer same day.</li> <li>If asymptomatic, give fluconazole <a href="#">↪80</a> for cryptococcal infection and start ART 4 weeks later.</li> </ul>
eGFR (if not pregnant)	On TDF: before starting, at 3 and 6 months, then 6 monthly	If eGFR $< 50$ : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At diagnosis: avoid tenofovir and start instead zidovudine<sup>2</sup>. If already on tenofovir, doctor to switch medication <a href="#">↪81</a>. Adjust doses of other medications.</li> <li>Check BP, glucose, urine dipstick and arrange kidney ultrasound. Discuss with specialist.</li> </ul>
Creatinine (if pregnant)		If creatinine $\geq 85$ $\mu$ m/L, avoid tenofovir and discuss/refer.
Hb and diff	On AZT: before starting, at 3 and 6 months, then 6 monthly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At diagnosis:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If Hb 7-7.9g/dL or neutrophil 1.0-1.5 <math>\times 10^9</math>/L: start ART and repeat in 4 weeks. If neutrophil 0.75-0.99 <math>\times 10^9</math>/L, start ART and repeat in 2 weeks.</li> <li>If Hb <math>&lt; 7</math>g/dL or neutrophils <math>&lt; 0.75 \times 10^9</math>/L: avoid zidovudine, discuss/refer.</li> </ul> </li> <li>On ART:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If Hb 7-7.9g/dL or neutrophil 1.0-1.5 <math>\times 10^9</math>/L: continue ART and repeat in 4 weeks. If neutrophil 0.75-0.99 <math>\times 10^9</math>/L, continue ART and repeat in 2 weeks.</li> <li>If Hb <math>&lt; 7</math>g/dL or neutrophils <math>&lt; 0.75 \times 10^9</math>/L: doctor to switch medication <a href="#">↪81</a>.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
ALT	On NVP: before starting, then 6 monthly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At diagnosis:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If ALT <math>&gt; 200</math>, refer same day. If ALT 100-200, doctor to review hepatitis results, medications, alcohol use and discuss with specialist. Avoid nevirapine.</li> </ul> </li> <li>On ART:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If ALT <math>&gt; 200</math>, refer same day. If ALT 100-200, continue medication and repeat ALT within 1 week.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Random total cholesterol, triglycerides	On LPV/r: before starting, then 6 monthly	If cholesterol $> 5.2$ mmol/L or triglycerides $\geq 2.3$ mmol/L: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Assess and manage CVD risk <a href="#">↪87</a>.</li> <li>Avoid lopinavir/ritonavir: doctor to give instead atazanavir/ritonavir.</li> <li>If statin needed, discuss with specialist as simvastatin cannot be given with lopinavir/ritonavir or atazanavir/ritonavir.</li> </ul>
Viral load	At 6 months, 12 months, then 12 monthly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If viral load <math>&gt; 1000</math>copies/mL for 1st time, give increased adherence support and repeat viral load within 3 months.</li> <li>If viral load <math>&gt; 1000</math>copies/mL for 2nd time, patient has virological failure: doctor to change to 2nd line ART. If already on 2nd line ART, discuss/refer.</li> </ul>

Advise and treat the patient with HIV [↪80](#).

<sup>1</sup>If not pregnant, check eGFR. If pregnant, check creatinine instead. <sup>2</sup>If previously on zidovudine, give instead abacavir, lamivudine and lopinavir/ritonavir.

SYMPTOMS CONTENTS

CHRONIC CONDITIONS CONTENTS

GENERAL HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC RESPIRATORY DISEASE

CHRONIC DISEASES OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

MENTAL HEALTH

MUSCULO-SKELETAL DISORDERS

WOMEN'S HEALTH

PALLIATIVE CARE

### Advise the patient with HIV

- Offer to help disclose status to supportive partner, family member or friend and refer to counsellor/support group. Advise patient's partner/s and children be tested for HIV.
- Encourage safe sex even if partner has HIV or patient on ART. Advise correct and consistent use of condoms with all partners. Demonstrate and give male/female condoms.
- Explain that HIV is treatable but not curable and needs lifelong adherence to treatment to prevent resistance.
- Explain the benefits of starting ART early, regardless of CD4 or stage but especially if CD4  $\leq$  350, stage 3 or 4, pregnant or breastfeeding. If patient chooses not to start ART, advise to attend regularly for routine HIV care and to return immediately if s/he becomes unwell.
- Give **increased adherence support** to the patient with poor adherence/attendance or viral load  $>$  1000copies/mL:
  - Educate patient and family on the importance of adherence and dangers of resistance.
  - Plan with patient how to take treatment. Consider adherence aids (pillboxes, diaries).
  - Refer for support: adherence counsellor, support group, treatment buddy, community care worker.

### Treat the patient with HIV

- Give prophylaxis: isoniazid preventive therapy (IPT), co-trimoxazole and fluconazole as needed (see below).
- Give **influenza vaccine** 0.5mL IM yearly.
- Give ART regardless of CD4 or stage [81](#), especially if CD4  $\leq$  350, stage 3 or 4, pregnant or breastfeeding.
- If already on ART, continue treatment.
  - If viral load  $>$  1000copies/mL for 2nd time, contraindication to current ART, intolerable side effect or on stavudine, change ART [81](#).

	When to give	What to give	Side effects	When to stop
Isoniazid preventive therapy (IPT)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TST positive or unavailable</li> <li>• If also starting ART, start IPT once tolerating ART.</li> <li>• Avoid if TB symptoms, on TB treatment<sup>1</sup>, peripheral neuropathy, liver disease, alcohol abuse.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Isoniazid</b> 300mg daily</li> <li>• <b>Pyridoxine</b> 25mg daily</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Peripheral neuropathy <a href="#">50</a></li> <li>• Rash <a href="#">53</a></li> <li>• Hepatitis</li> <li>- If jaundice: refer same day.</li> <li>- If nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain: check ALT and review result within 24 hours <a href="#">79</a>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If TST positive, stop after 36 months.</li> <li>• If TST unavailable, stop after 36 months. If later TST negative, stop IPT immediately.</li> </ul>
Co-trimoxazole	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CD4 <math>\leq</math> 350cells/mm<sup>3</sup></li> <li>• Stage 3 or 4</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If CrCl <math>&gt;</math> 30mL/min, give <b>co-trimoxazole</b> 160/800mg daily.</li> <li>• If CrCl 15-30mL/min, give <b>co-trimoxazole</b> 80/400mg daily.</li> <li>• If CrCl <math>&lt;</math> 15mL/min, avoid <b>co-trimoxazole</b> and discuss with doctor.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nausea/vomiting <a href="#">32</a></li> <li>• Rash <a href="#">53</a></li> <li>• Hepatitis</li> <li>- If jaundice: refer same day.</li> <li>- If nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain: check ALT and review result within 24 hours <a href="#">79</a>.</li> </ul>	Stop after 1 year on ART if CD4 $>$ 350cells/mm <sup>3</sup> and viral load $<$ 1000copies/mL.
Fluconazole	Cryptococcal antigen positive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If pregnant, breastfeeding or known liver disease, avoid fluconazole and refer/discuss same day.</li> <li>• If symptomatic (headache, confusion), refer same day.</li> <li>• If asymptomatic, give <b>fluconazole</b> 800mg daily for 2 weeks, then 400mg daily for 2 months, then 200mg daily to complete at least 1 year.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nausea/vomiting <a href="#">32</a></li> <li>• Hepatitis</li> <li>- If jaundice: refer same day.</li> <li>- If nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain: check ALT and review result within 24 hours <a href="#">79</a>.</li> </ul>	Stop after at least 1 year on ART and fluconazole if 2 consecutive CD4s $\geq$ 100cells/mm <sup>3</sup> and viral load $<$ 1000copies/mL.

### Review the patient with HIV

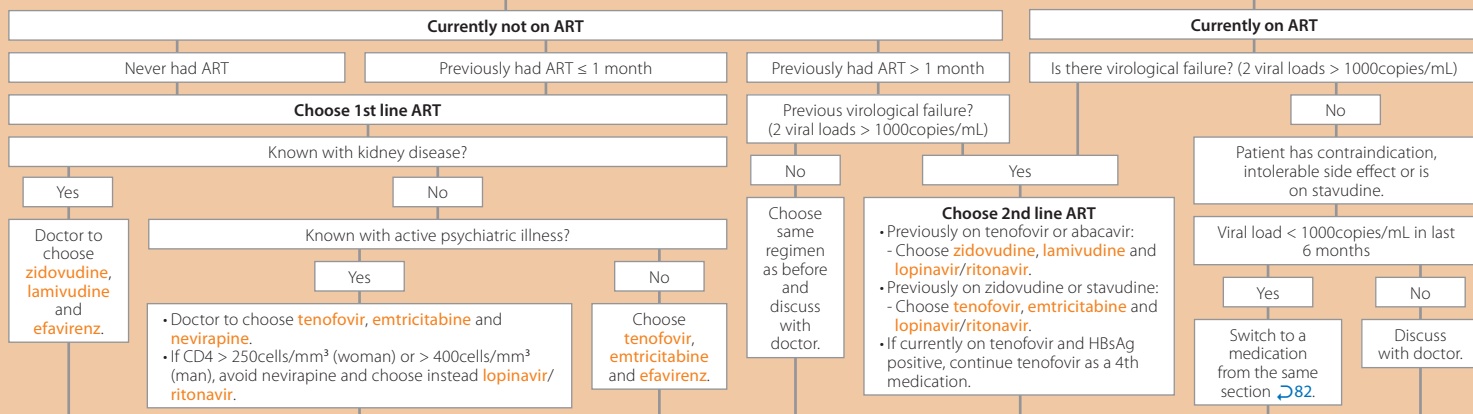
- If starting ART: review 2 weeks after starting ART, then monthly.
- Once on ART for  $\geq$  1 year, 2 consecutive viral loads  $<$  1000copies/mL, not pregnant or breastfeeding, is adherent and well, review 3-6 monthly.
  - If unwell or problems with adherence, see more often.
- If declines ART: review patient 6 monthly. Advise patient to return sooner if unwell or s/he decides to start ART.

<sup>1</sup>If previous TB and patient eligible for IPT, start IPT immediately after completing TB treatment.



# Start or change ART in the patient with HIV

## 1. Decide which ART regimen the patient needs



## 2. Check other medications and change if needed

- If epilepsy, avoid phenytoin and use instead valproic acid [99](#).
- If on oral contraceptive, change method [112](#). If implant and starting efavirenz, offer removal and change to IUCD or injectable contraceptive [112](#).
- If on rifampicin and starting lopinavir/ritonavir or atazanavir/ritonavir, switch rifampicin to rifabutin [75](#).
- If on simvastatin and starting lopinavir/ritonavir or atazanavir/ritonavir, avoid simvastatin and discuss with specialist.

## 3. Take bloods according to chosen regimen [79](#)

If blood results abnormal, alter regimen choice [82](#). Discuss if needed.

## 4. Decide when to start/change ART

### If starting ART:

- If pregnant or breastfeeding: start ART same week unless newly diagnosed TB (start ART after 2 weeks) or suspected TB (refer instead to doctor).
- If TB, start ART once tolerating TB treatment:
  - If CD4  $\leq$  50cells/mm<sup>3</sup>, start ART within 2 weeks of TB treatment. If CD4  $>$  50cells/mm<sup>3</sup>, start ART between 2-8 weeks of TB treatment.
  - If TB meningitis, start ART after 4-6 weeks of TB treatment.
- If cryptococcal antigen positive: start ART after 4 weeks of fluconazole. If cryptococcal meningitis, start ART after 4-6 weeks of fluconazole.
- If none of above: start ART within 2 weeks.

### If changing ART:

- Change as soon as blood results are available.
- If contraindication or intolerable side effect: change same day and review blood results as soon as possible.

### 5. Start/change ART

- Give a combination of 3 medications (1 from each of the 3 sections in the table below) according to chosen ART regimen and blood results.
- Give fixed dose combination tablet if available.

	Medication	Dose	Urgent side effects (stop medication and refer same day)	Self-limiting side effects (discuss with doctor if persist after 6 weeks)	Long-term side effects
1	Tenofovir (TDF)	300mg daily	Kidney failure	Nausea, diarrhoea	-
	Zidovudine (AZT)	• 300mg 12 hourly • If CrCl < 15mL/min: refer/discuss	• Lactic acidosis <sup>1</sup> • Symptomatic anaemia (pallor with respiratory rate > 30, dizziness/faintness or chest pain)	• Headache • Nausea • Muscle pain • Fatigue (if Hb ≤ 7g/dL doctor to switch medication ↗81)	Fat loss in face, limbs and buttocks; fat accumulation (central obesity, breast enlargement); switch to tenofovir or abacavir ↗81.
	Abacavir (ABC) Avoid if previous Abacavir Hypersensitivity Reaction (AHR)	300mg 12 hourly or 600mg daily	AHR likely if ≥ 2 of: • Fever • Rash • Fatigue/body pain • Nausea/vomiting/diarrhoea/abdominal pain • Sore throat/cough/difficulty breathing	• Nausea • Vomiting • Diarrhoea	-
2	Lamivudine (3TC)	• 150mg 12 hourly or 300mg daily • If CrCl < 50mL/min, reduce dose: - CrCl 30-50mL/min: give 150mg daily. - CrCl < 30mL/min: refer/discuss	Uncommon	Uncommon. Occasional nausea and diarrhoea	Uncommon
	Emtricitabine (FTC)	200mg daily		Uncommon. Occasional nausea and diarrhoea	Darkening of palms and soles
3	Efavirenz (EFV) Avoid if active psychiatric illness	• 600mg daily. • If < 40kg: give 400mg daily.	• Rash ↗53 • Jaundice/hepatitis <sup>2</sup> • Psychosis	• Rash ↗53 • Headache, dizziness, sleep problems, low mood - take dose at night. If on 600mg daily, doctor to consider giving 400mg daily.	Fat loss in face, limbs and buttocks; fat accumulation (central obesity, breast enlargement); switch to nevirapine or lopinavir/ritonavir ↗81.
	Nevirapine (NVP)	200mg daily for 2 weeks, then 200mg 12 hourly	• Rash ↗53 • Jaundice/hepatitis <sup>2</sup>	• Rash ↗53 • Nausea	-
	Lopinavir/ritonavir (LPV/r)	400/100mg 12 hourly (with food)	• Jaundice/hepatitis <sup>2</sup> • Dyslipidaemia	Diarrhoea: if intolerable or > 6 weeks, doctor to switch to atazanavir/ritonavir ↗81.	Dyslipidaemia: discuss with doctor.
	Atazanavir/ritonavir (ATV/r)	300mg atazanavir and 100mg ritonavir daily (with food)	• Kidney stone • Hepatitis - If jaundice: refer same day <sup>3</sup> - If nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain: check ALT and review result within 24 hours ↗79.	• Rash ↗53 • Headache • Nausea, abdominal pain, diarrhoea	-

<sup>1</sup>Lactic acidosis likely if 2 or more of: fatigue/weakness, body pain, nausea/vomiting, diarrhoea, weight loss, loss of appetite, abdominal pain, difficulty breathing (more likely if rapid lactate ≥ 2.5mmol/L). <sup>2</sup>If jaundice: refer same day. If nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain: check ALT and review result within 24 hours ↗79. <sup>3</sup>Atazanavir can cause jaundice without hepatitis. If patient well with no nausea, vomiting or abdominal pain, check ALT and review result within 24 hours ↗79. Discuss with specialist.

# Asthma and COPD: diagnosis

- The patient with chronic cough may have more than one disease. Also consider TB, pneumocystis pneumonia (PJP), lung cancer, bronchitis, heart failure and post-infectious cough [↗28](#).
- Asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) both present with cough, wheeze, tight chest or difficulty breathing. Distinguish asthma from COPD:

## Asthma likely if several of:

- Onset before 20 years of age
- Associated hayfever, eczema, allergic conjunctivitis, other allergies
- Intermittent symptoms with normal breathing in between
- Symptoms worse at night, early morning, with cold or stress
- Patient or family have a history of asthma
- PEF<sup>1</sup> response to inhaled beta-agonist (e.g. salbutamol) improves  $\geq 20\%$  [↗84](#).

Give routine asthma care [→85](#).

## COPD likely if several of:

- Onset after 40 years of age
- Symptoms are persistent and worsen slowly over time
- Cough with sputum starts long before difficulty breathing
- History of heavy smoking or working in dusty environment
- Previous diagnosis of TB
- Previous doctor diagnosis of COPD

Give routine COPD care [→86](#).

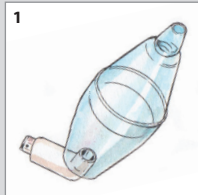
Doctor to confirm diagnosis. If doctor not available, treat as asthma [↗85](#) and refer to doctor within 1 month.

## Using inhalers and spacers

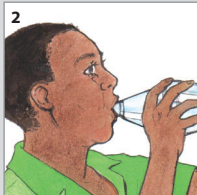
- If patient unable to use an inhaler correctly, add a spacer to increase drug delivery to the lungs, especially if using inhaled corticosteroids. This may also reduce the risk of oral candida.
- Clean the spacer before first use and every second week: remove the canister and wash spacer with soapy water. Allow it to drip dry. Avoid rinsing with water after each use.

### How to use an inhaler with a spacer<sup>2</sup>

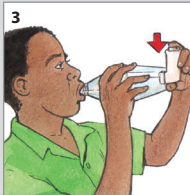
1



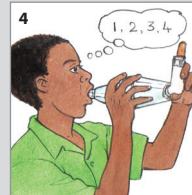
Shake inhaler and insert into spacer.



- Stand up and breathe out.
- Then form a seal with lips around mouthpiece.



Press pump once to release one puff into spacer.



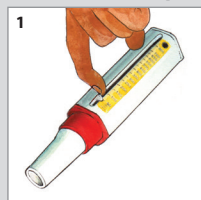
- Then take 4 breaths keeping spacer in mouth.
- Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each puff.
- Rinse mouth after using inhaled corticosteroids.

<sup>1</sup>Peak expiratory flow rate. <sup>2</sup>If no spacer available, explain how to use inhaler without spacer: take off cap and shake inhaler. Stand up and breathe out. Then form seal with lips around inhaler mouthpiece. Breathe in slowly. While breathing in, press pump once and keep breathing in slowly. Close mouth and hold breath for 10 seconds. Breathe out.

## Using a peak expiratory flow meter

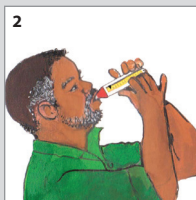
- The peak expiratory flow meter measures how well air moves out of a patient's lungs.
- Use a peak expiratory flow meter to help diagnose asthma and to monitor control and response to medications.
- Use the same peak expiratory flow meter each time.

### How to measure peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR)



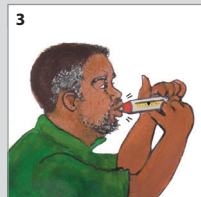
1

Move marker to bottom of numbered scale.



2

- Stand up and take a full, deep breath.
- Hold breath and place mouthpiece in mouth.
- Form a seal with lips.



3

Breathe out as hard and as fast as possible (keeping fingers clear of scale).



4

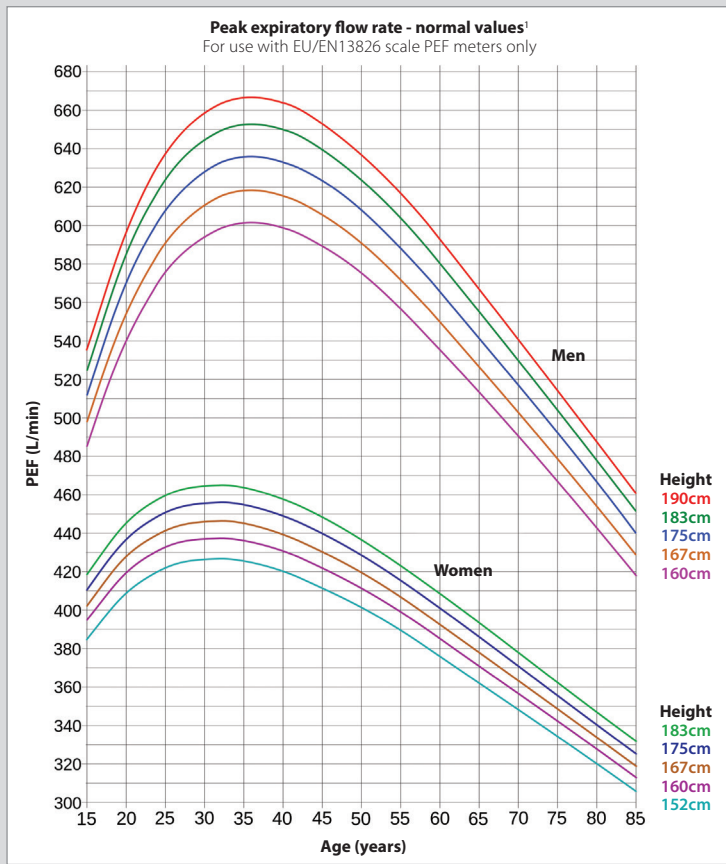
- Record the result.
- Move marker back to bottom and repeat twice. Use the highest of 3 results.

### How to measure PEFR response to inhaled beta-agonist

- Measure PEFR as above (use the highest of 3 results). This is the initial PEFR.
- Give inhaled **salbutamol** 200µg (2 puffs) and wait for 15 minutes.
- Repeat PEFR as above.
- Calculate % response =  $\frac{(\text{repeat PEFR} - \text{initial PEFR})}{\text{initial PEFR}} \times 100$

### How to calculate % of predicted PEFR

- Measure PEFR as above (use the highest of 3 results). This is the observed PEFR.
- Determine patient's predicted PEFR using adjacent graph:
  - Plot the patient's sex, height and age.
  - Read predicted PEFR on left of graph.
- Calculate % of predicted PEFR =  $\text{observed PEFR} \div \text{predicted PEFR} \times 100$ .



<sup>1</sup>Adapted by Clement Clarke for use with EN13826 / EU scale peak flow meters from Nunn AJ, Gregg I. BMJ 1989;298:1068-70

# Asthma: routine care

Ensure that a doctor confirms the diagnosis of asthma.

## Assess the patient with asthma

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptom control	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If patient has wheeze/tight chest and is breathless at rest or while talking or respiratory rate &gt; 30, manage acute exacerbation <a href="#">↗29</a>.</li> <li>• Any of the following indicate that the patient's asthma is <b>not controlled</b>:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Daytime cough, difficulty breathing, tight chest or wheeze &gt; 2 times a week</li> <li>- Night-time or early morning waking due to asthma symptoms</li> <li>- Limitation of daily activities due to asthma symptoms</li> <li>- Need to use salbutamol inhaler &gt; 2 times a week</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If none of the above then asthma is <b>controlled</b>.</li> </ul>
Other symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage symptoms as on symptom pages. Ask about and manage hayfever <a href="#">↗24</a> and dyspepsia <a href="#">↗31</a>.</li> <li>• Ask the patient using inhaled corticosteroids about a sore mouth. Check for oral candida <a href="#">↗25</a>.</li> </ul>
Medication use	Every visit	Check adherence and that patient can use inhaler and spacer correctly <a href="#">↗83</a> . If not adherent, refer for community care worker support.
Peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• At diagnosis</li> <li>• If symptoms worsen</li> <li>• If change to medication at last visit</li> </ul>	Calculate % of predicted PEFR <a href="#">↗84</a> : If < 80% asthma is <b>not controlled</b> .

## Advise the patient with asthma

- Ask about smoking. If patient smokes tobacco [↗104](#). Support patient to change [↗127](#).
- Ensure patient understands medication: beta-agonist (salbutamol) relieves symptoms but does not control asthma. Inhaled corticosteroid (budesonide) prevents but does not relieve symptoms and it is the mainstay of asthma control.
- Inhaled corticosteroids can cause oral candida: advise patient to rinse and gargle after each dose of budesonide.
- Advise patient to avoid allergens that worsen/trigger asthma or hayfever (e.g. animals, dust, chemicals, pollen, grass). Also advise to avoid aspirin, NSAIDs (e.g. ibuprofen) and beta-blockers (e.g. metoprolol).

## Treat the patient with asthma

- Give inhaled **salbutamol** 200mcg (2 puffs) as needed, up to 4 times a day. If exercise-induced asthma, give patient **salbutamol** 200mcg (2 puffs) to use before exercise.
- If patient received prednisolone or hydrocortisone for an acute exacerbation, give **prednisolone** 40mg daily for 5 days.
- If acute exacerbation or asthma is **not controlled**, step up treatment:
  - Before adjusting treatment ensure patient is adherent and can use inhaler and spacer correctly [↗83](#). Also check patient is avoiding smoking, allergens and medications (aspirin, NSAIDs, beta-blockers).
  - Give inhaled **budesonide** 200mcg 12 hourly if not already on it. If already on it, increase **budesonide** to 400mcg 12 hourly.
  - If still not controlled, add slow release **theophylline** 200mg 12 hourly. Increase **theophylline** to 300mg 12 hourly if needed. If not controlled after 1 month, refer to specialist.
- If asthma is **controlled**: continue medication at same dose. If controlled and no acute exacerbations for ≥ 6 months, step down treatment:
  - If on theophylline, decrease dose or stop.
  - If on budesonide, decrease total daily dose by 200mcg. If on 200mcg daily, stop budesonide.
  - If symptoms worsen while stepping down treatment, step up again to same medication and dose as when the patient was controlled.
- Give **influenza vaccination** 0.5mL IM yearly.
- If acute exacerbation, only give antibiotic if fever or thick yellow/green sputum: give **doxycycline** 100mg 12 hourly for 5 days.
- If > 2 courses of prednisolone given in past 6 months or acute exacerbation occurs on maximum treatment, refer to doctor.

- Review the patient with controlled asthma 3 monthly, the patient with asthma that is not controlled monthly, and the patient with an acute exacerbation after 1 week.
- **Advise patient to return before next appointment if no better or symptoms worsen.**

# Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD): routine care

Ensure that a doctor confirms the diagnosis of COPD and refer for spirometry if available.

## Assess the patient with COPD

Assess	When to assess	Note
COPD symptoms: cough and difficulty breathing	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If patient has wheeze/tight chest and breathless at rest or while talking or respiratory rate &gt; 30, manage acute exacerbation <a href="#">29</a>.</li> <li>• Assess disease severity: If difficulty breathing with activities of daily living (like dressing), COPD is <b>severe</b>. If unable to walk at same pace as others of same age, COPD is <b>moderate</b>. If difficulty breathing only when walking fast/up a hill, COPD is <b>mild</b>.</li> <li>• Investigate for TB only if patient has other TB symptoms like weight loss, night sweats, blood-stained sputum <a href="#">72</a>.</li> </ul>
Other symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage symptoms as on symptom pages.</li> <li>• Ask the patient using inhaled corticosteroids about a sore mouth. Check for oral candida <a href="#">25</a>.</li> <li>• If swelling in both legs, refer to doctor to consider heart failure.</li> </ul>
Medication use	Every visit	Check adherence and that patient can use inhaler and spacer correctly <a href="#">83</a> . If not adherent, refer for community care worker support.
Depression	Every visit	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either <a href="#">101</a> .
Palliative care	Every visit	If severe COPD, > 3 hospital admissions for COPD in 1 year or heart failure, also consider giving palliative care <a href="#">122</a> .
CVD risk	At diagnosis, then depending on risk	Assess CVD risk <a href="#">87</a> . If < 10% with CVD risk factors or 10-20% reassess after 1 year, if > 20% reassess after 6 months.
Peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• At diagnosis</li> <li>• If symptoms worsen</li> <li>• If change to medication at last visit</li> </ul>	Calculate % of predicted PEFR <a href="#">84</a> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If 50-80%, COPD is <b>moderate</b>.</li> <li>• If &lt;50% COPD is <b>severe</b>.</li> </ul>

## Advise the patient with COPD

- Ask about smoking. If patient smokes tobacco [104](#). Support patient to change [127](#). Stopping smoking is the mainstay of COPD care.
- Encourage the patient to take a walk daily and to increase activities of daily living like gardening, housework and using stairs instead of lifts.
- Help the patient to manage his/her CVD risk [88](#).
- Inhaled corticosteroids can cause oral candida: advise patient to rinse and gargle after each dose of budesonide.

## Treat the patient with COPD

- Give inhaled **salbutamol** 200mcg (2 puffs) when needed, up to 4 times a day.
- If patient received prednisolone or hydrocortisone for acute exacerbation at this visit, give **prednisolone** 40mg daily for 5 days.
- Before adjusting treatment ensure patient is adherent and can use inhaler and spacer correctly [83](#).
- If **moderate** or **severe** COPD, add inhaled **ipratropium bromide** 40mcg (2 puffs) when needed (up to 4 times a day).
- If **moderate** or **severe** COPD and  $\geq 2$  exacerbations in 1 year, add **budesonide** 400mcg 12 hourly.
- If **severe** COPD, add slow release **theophylline** 200mg 12 hourly. Increase to 300mg 12 hourly if needed. If no better after 1 month, refer to specialist.
- If sputum increases or changes in colour to yellow/green treat for chest infection:
  - Give **doxycycline** 100mg 12 hourly for 5 days.
  - If increased breathlessness, also give **prednisolone** 40mg daily for 5 days if not already on it.
- If  $\geq 2$  courses of prednisolone given in 6 months, refer to doctor for review and spirometry.
- Give **influenza vaccination** 0.5mL IM yearly.

If stable and mild COPD review 6 monthly. If moderate/severe COPD or frequent/recent exacerbation review monthly.

# Cardiovascular disease (CVD) risk: diagnosis

**CVD risk is the chance of having a heart attack or stroke over the next 10 years**

## Identify if the patient has established CVD:

- Patient known with any of: previous heart attack, angina or heart failure, previous stroke or TIA or peripheral vascular disease.
- If patient has current/recent chest pain, especially on exertion and relieved by rest, screen for ischaemic heart disease →96.
- If patient has current/recent leg pain, especially on walking and relieved by rest, screen for peripheral vascular disease →49.
- If new sudden asymmetric weakness or numbness of face, arm or leg; difficulty speaking or visual disturbance: consider **stroke** or **TIA** →95.

## Look for CVD risk factors:

- Ask about **smoking**: consider the patient who quit smoking in the past year a smoker for CVD risk assessment.
- Ask about **family history**: a parent or sibling with premature CVD (man < 55 years or woman < 65 years) is a risk factor.
- Calculate **Body Mass Index (BMI)**: weight (kg) ÷ height (m) ÷ height (m). A BMI > 25 is a risk factor.
- Measure **waist circumference** over no/light clothing, at the end of a normal breath out, midway between lowest rib and top of iliac crest. More than 80cm (woman) or 94cm (man) is a risk factor.
- Look for **hypertension**: check BP →92.
- Look for **diabetes**: check glucose →89.
- Check random total **cholesterol**. If unavailable, use cholesterol of 5.2mmol/L to calculate CVD risk.

## Calculate the patient's CVD risk:

- Plot patient's risk on charts<sup>1</sup> below using diabetes status, age, sex, systolic BP (SBP), cholesterol and smoking status. Show the patient what his/her risk of heart attack or stroke might be over next 10 years.

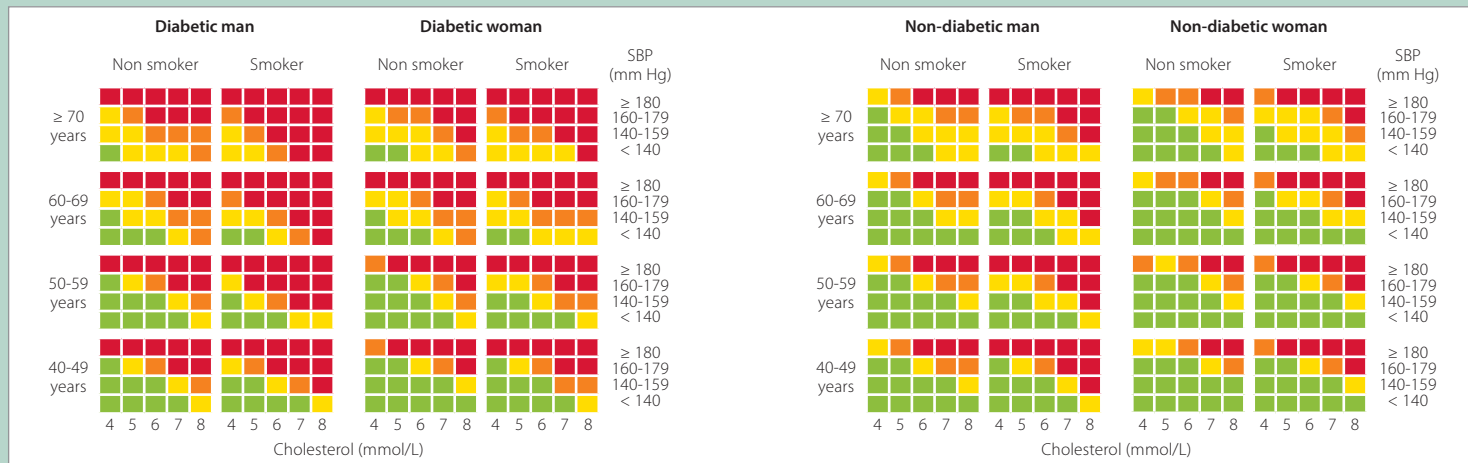
**CVD risk<sup>1</sup>:**

**> 30%**

**20-30%**

**10-20%**

**< 10%**



• If CVD risk factors or CVD risk ≥ 10% or established CVD, manage the CVD risk →88.

• If CVD risk < 10% and no CVD risk factors, reassess CVD risk after 5 years.

<sup>1</sup>Adapted from WHO/ISH Cardiovascular Risk Prediction Chart for WHO epidemiological sub-regions AFR E. From: Prevention of Cardiovascular Disease. Pocket Guidelines for Assessment and Management of Cardiovascular Risk. World Health Organization. Geneva, 2007.

# Cardiovascular disease (CVD) risk: routine care

## Assess the patient with CVD risk factors or CVD risk $\geq 10\%$ or established CVD

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	Ask about chest pain <a href="#">↗27</a> , difficulty breathing <a href="#">↗28</a> , leg pain <a href="#">↗49</a> , or new sudden asymmetric weakness or numbness of face, arm or leg; difficulty speaking or visual disturbance <a href="#">↗95</a> .
Modifiable risk factors	Every visit	Ask about smoking, diet and physical activity. Manage as below.
BMI	Every visit	BMI = weight (kg) $\div$ height (m) $\div$ height (m). Aim for $< 25$ .
Waist circumference	Every visit	Measure while standing, on breathing out, midway between lowest rib and top of iliac crest. Aim for $< 80\text{cm}$ (woman) and $< 94\text{cm}$ (man).
BP	Every visit	If known hypertension <a href="#">↗93</a> . If not, check BP: if $\geq 140/90$ <a href="#">↗92</a> .
CVD risk	At diagnosis, then depending on risk	If $< 10\%$ with CVD risk factors or 10-20% reassess after 1 year. If $> 20\%$ , reassess after 6 months.
Glucose	At diagnosis, then depending on result	Check glucose <a href="#">↗89</a> . If known diabetes <a href="#">↗90</a> .
Random total cholesterol	• At diagnosis • 3 months after starting statin	• If cholesterol $> 8\text{mmol/L}$ , start simvastatin as below and refer for further assessment. • If repeat cholesterol $> 5\text{mmol/L}$ increase simvastatin as below. If already on 40mg daily discuss with specialist.

## Advise the patient with CVD risk factors or CVD risk $\geq 10\%$ or established CVD

- Discuss CVD risk: explore the patient's understanding of CVD risk and the need for a change in lifestyle.
- Invite patient to address 1 lifestyle CVD risk factor at a time: help plan how to fit the lifestyle change into his/her day. Explore what might hinder or support this. Together set reasonable target/s for next visit.



### Physical activity

- Aim for at least 30 minutes of moderate exercise (e.g. brisk walking) on most days of the week.
- Increase activities of daily living like gardening, housework, walking instead of taking transport, using stairs instead of lifts.
- Exercise with arms if unable to use legs.



### Smoking

If patient smokes tobacco [↗104](#).



### Weight

- Aim for BMI  $< 25$ , and waist circumference  $< 80\text{cm}$  (woman) and  $< 94\text{cm}$  (man).
- Any weight reduction is beneficial, even if targets are not met.



### Diet

- Eat a variety of foods in moderation. Reduce portion sizes.
- Increase fruit and vegetables.
- Reduce fatty foods: eat low fat food, cut off animal fat.
- Reduce salty processed foods like gravies, stock cubes, packet soup. Avoid adding salt to food.
- Avoid/use less sugar.

### Stress

Assess and manage stress [↗67](#).



### Screen for alcohol/drug use

- Limit alcohol intake  $\leq 2$  drinks/day and avoid alcohol on at least 2 days of the week.
- In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk  $\geq 4$  drinks/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any [↗105](#).

- Identify support to maintain lifestyle change: health education officer or dietician/nutritionist, friend, partner or relative to attend clinic visits, a healthy lifestyle group.
- Be encouraging and congratulate any achievement. Avoid judging, criticising or blaming. It is the patient's right to make decisions about his/her own health. For tips on communicating effectively [↗126](#).

## Treat the patient with CVD risk

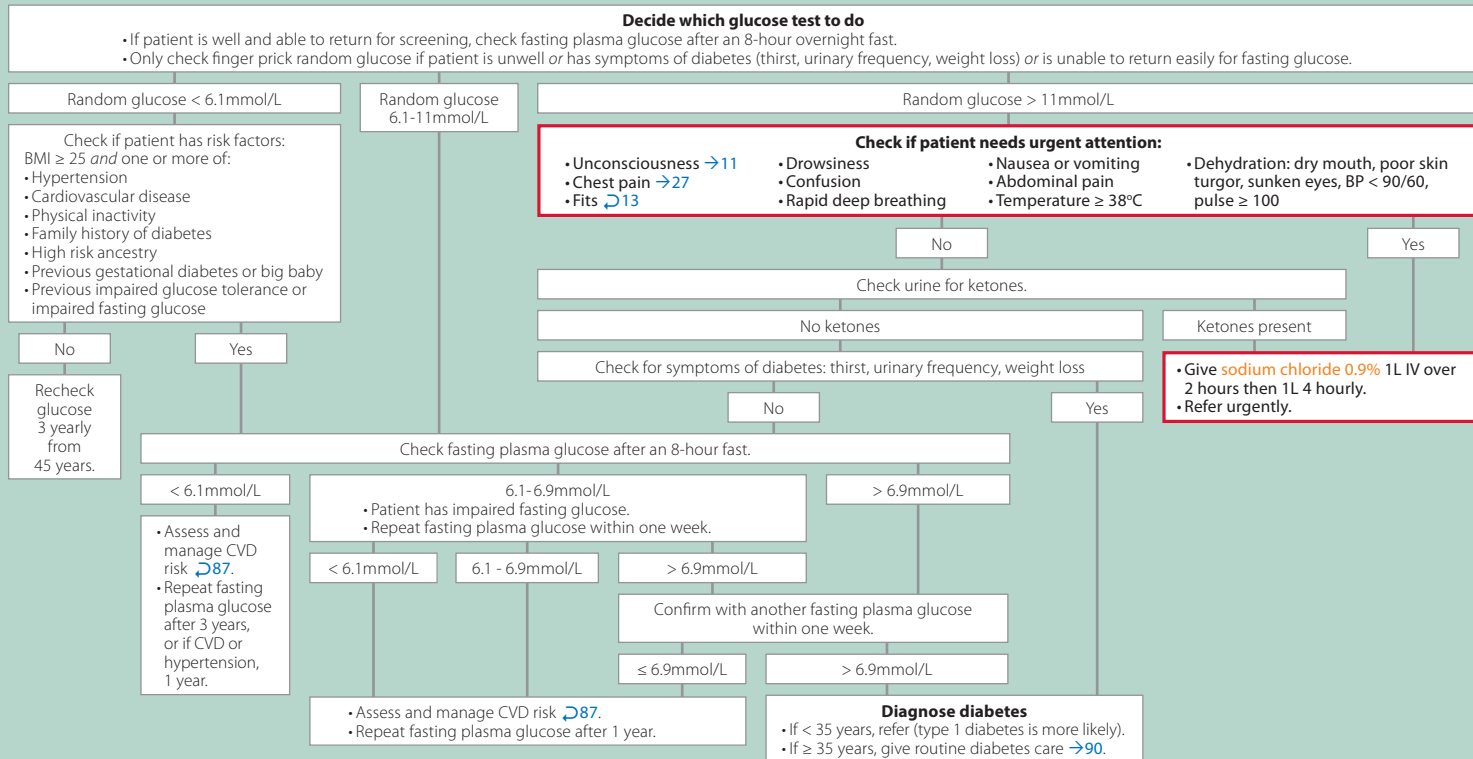
- Give **simvastatin**<sup>2</sup> if patient has established CVD, cholesterol  $> 8\text{mmol/L}$ , CVD risk  $\geq 30\%$ , or diabetes and  $\geq 40$  years or CVD risk  $> 20\%$ . Start 20mg daily. If repeat cholesterol  $> 5\text{mmol/L}$  increase to 40mg daily. If already on 40mg daily discuss with specialist.

If CVD risk remains  $> 30\%$  after 6 months, refer.

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer. <sup>2</sup>Avoid simvastatin if patient on lopinavir/ritonavir or atazanavir/ritonavir, discuss with specialist.



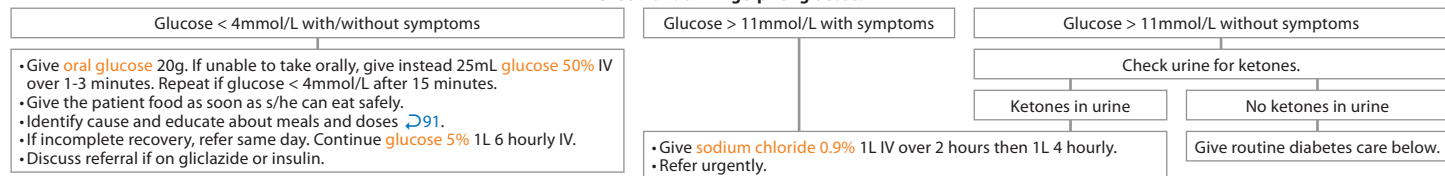
# Diabetes: diagnosis



# Diabetes: routine care

- Give urgent attention to the patient with diabetes and one or more of:**
- Chest pain →27
  - Fitting ↻13
  - Decreased consciousness, drowsiness
  - Confusion or unusual behaviour
  - Weakness or dizziness
  - Shaking
  - Sweating
  - Palpitations
  - Rapid deep breathing
  - Nausea or vomiting
  - Abdominal pain
  - Thirst or hunger
  - Temperature  $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$
  - Dehydration: dry mouth, poor skin turgor, sunken eyes, BP  $< 90/60$ , pulse  $\geq 100$

## Check random fingerprick glucose:



## Assess the patient with diabetes

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	Manage symptoms as on symptom pages. Ask about chest pain ↻27 and leg pain ↻49.
Family planning	Every visit	Assess patient's contraception needs ↻112. If pregnant or planning pregnancy, refer for specialist care.
CVD risk	At diagnosis, then yearly	Assess CVD risk ↻87. Start simvastatin if CVD risk $> 20\%$ ↻91.
BP	Every visit	If known hypertension ↻93. If not, check BP: if $\geq 140/90$ ↻92.
Eyes for retinopathy	At diagnosis, yearly and if visual problems	If visual problems, cataracts or new retinopathy, refer.
Feet	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual: every visit</li> <li>• Comprehensive: at diagnosis then yearly, more often if problems</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual assessment: look for ulcers, calluses, redness, warmth, deformity.</li> <li>• Comprehensive assessment: visual assessment as above, foot pulses, reflexes, sensation in toes and feet</li> <li>• If ulcers ↻59. If severe infection or other abnormalities, refer to specialist.</li> </ul>
Random glucose	Only if symptoms or adjusting glucose-lowering medication	If random glucose $< 4\text{mmol/L}$ or $> 11\text{mmol/L}$ give urgent attention above.
HbA <sub>1c</sub> (aim for $< 7\%$ )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 6 monthly if HbA<sub>1c</sub> <math>&lt; 7\%</math></li> <li>• 3 monthly if HbA<sub>1c</sub> <math>\geq 7\%</math> or after treatment change</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If HbA<sub>1c</sub> <math>&lt; 7\%</math>: continue same treatment for diabetes ↻91 and repeat HbA<sub>1c</sub> in 6 months.</li> <li>• If HbA<sub>1c</sub> 7–10% and adherent: step up treatment ↻91 and repeat HbA<sub>1c</sub> after 3 months.</li> <li>• If HbA<sub>1c</sub> 7–10% and not adherent: educate on importance of adherence and repeat HbA<sub>1c</sub> after 3 months.</li> <li>• If HbA<sub>1c</sub> <math>&gt; 10\%</math>: discuss with doctor.</li> </ul>
Urine albumin creatinine ratio (ACR)	At diagnosis, then yearly if not on enalapril	If ACR raised, exclude urine infection, repeat ACR twice to confirm diabetic kidney disease and start enalapril ↻91.
Creatinine and eGFR	At diagnosis, then yearly	If eGFR $< 60\text{mL}/\text{min}/1.73\text{m}^2$ , refer to doctor.
Random total cholesterol	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• At diagnosis then yearly</li> <li>• 3 months after starting simvastatin</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If cholesterol <math>&gt; 8\text{mmol/L}</math>, start simvastatin ↻91 and refer for further assessment.</li> <li>• If repeat cholesterol <math>&gt; 5\text{mmol/L}</math> increase simvastatin ↻91. If already on 40mg daily discuss with specialist.</li> </ul>

### Advise the patient with diabetes

- Help the patient to manage his/her CVD risk [88](#).
- Explain importance of adherence and to eat regular meals. If newly diagnosed, poor adherence or attendance, refer for community care worker support.
- Ensure patient can recognise and manage hypoglycaemia (shaking, sweating, palpitations, weakness, hunger):
  - Drink sugar water or eat a sweet/sandwich. Always carry something sweet. If fits, confusion/coma, rub sugar inside mouth.
- Identify and manage the cause: increased exercise, missed meals, inappropriate dosing of glucose-lowering medications, alcohol, illnesses like infections.
- Encourage the patient to eat a healthy, balanced, low-fat diet including lots of vegetables. Eat fewer sweet foods.
- Educate the patient to care for his/her feet to prevent ulcers and amputation: avoid walking barefoot or without socks, wash feet in lukewarm water and dry well especially between the toes, avoid cutting calluses or corns, use care when cutting nails. Look at feet every day and see health care worker if any problem or injury.

### Treat the patient with diabetes

- Give **simvastatin**<sup>1</sup> if  $\geq 40$  years, CVD risk  $> 20\%$ , established CVD or cholesterol  $> 8\text{mmol/L}$ . Start **simvastatin**<sup>1</sup> 20mg daily. If repeat cholesterol  $> 5\text{mmol/L}$  increase to 40mg daily. If already on 40mg daily discuss with specialist.
- Start **aspirin** 150mg daily if patient has CVD. Avoid if peptic ulcer, dyspepsia, kidney or liver disease.
- Give **enalapril** 5mg daily if diabetic kidney disease confirmed with urine albumin creatinine ratio (ACR), even if no hypertension. Increase gradually to 20mg daily if systolic BP remains  $> 100$ . Avoid in angioedema.
- Give glucose-lowering medication in a stepwise fashion below. Ensure patient is adherent before increasing treatment. If not adherent, refer for community care worker support. If  $\text{HbA}_{1c} \geq 7\%$  after 3 months on maximum dose then move to next step.

Step	Medication	Start dose	Maximum dose	Note
1	<b>Metformin</b>	500mg daily	1g 12 hourly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Take with or after meals.</li> <li>• Increase by 500mg/day every week if random glucose <math>\geq 10\text{mmol/L}</math> and patient is adherent.</li> <li>• Avoid in kidney or liver disease, or heart failure.</li> </ul>
2	Add <b>gliclazide</b>	40mg daily	320mg daily	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continue metformin.</li> <li>• Take with breakfast.</li> <li>• If random glucose <math>\geq 10\text{mmol/L}</math> and patient is adherent, increase once a week by 40mg/day.</li> <li>• If total daily dose <math>&gt; 160\text{mg}</math> then give in 2 divided doses.</li> <li>• Avoid in kidney or liver disease.</li> </ul>
3	Add <b>basal insulin</b>	0.1 units/kg/dose subcutaneously		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Take at bedtime.</li> <li>• Continue metformin. Decrease gliclazide gradually until stopped.</li> <li>• Increase by 2 units every 3 days until morning fasting blood glucose is between 5.0 and 7.2mmol/L.</li> <li>• Educate patient on home blood glucose monitoring and issue meter.</li> <li>• Once stable, patient to check fasting glucose on waking once a week.</li> <li>• Educate about insulin:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Explain injection technique and recommended sites: abdomen, thighs, upper arms.</li> <li>- Advise patient to store insulin in fridge or a cool dark place.</li> <li>- Ensure patient can recognise hypoglycaemia and hyperglycaemia.</li> <li>- Arrange for sharps disposal at clinic.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If <math>&gt; 30\text{IU}</math> needed, episodes of hypoglycaemia at night or <math>\text{HbA}_{1c} &gt; 7\%</math> after 3 months, discuss/refer.</li> </ul>

Review the patient with diabetes 6 monthly once stable.

<sup>1</sup>Avoid simvastatin if patient on lopinavir/ritonavir or atazanavir/ritonavir, discuss with specialist.

# Hypertension: diagnosis

## Check blood pressure (BP)

- Seat patient with back against chair and arm supported at heart level for 5 minutes.
- Use a larger cuff if mid-upper arm circumference is  $> 34$ cm.
- Record systolic BP (SBP) and diastolic BP (DBP): SBP is the first appearance of sound, DBP is the disappearance of sound.
- Check two readings 5 minutes apart. Use the lowest reading to determine the patient's BP.
- If patient is pregnant, interpret reading [→114](#).

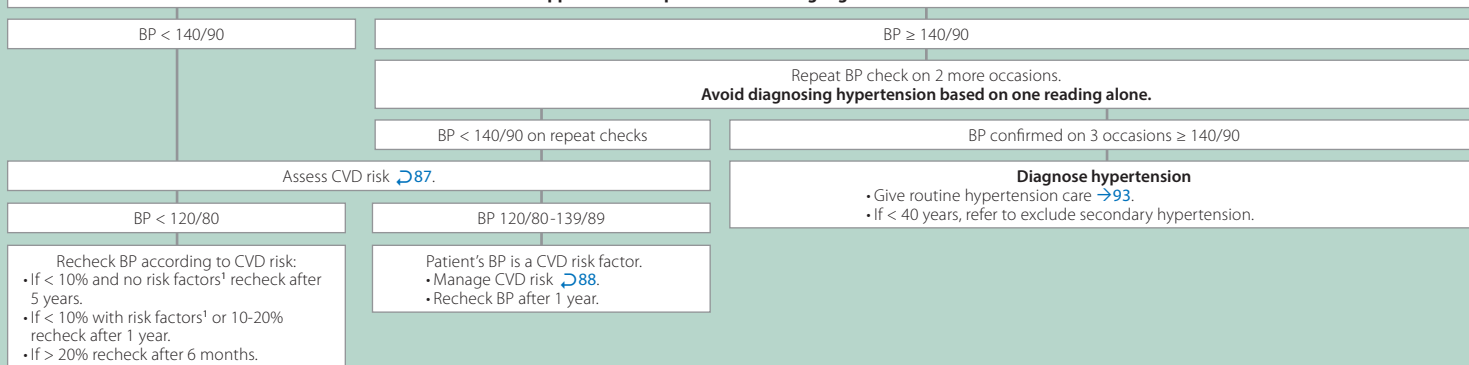
## Give urgent attention to the patient with BP $\geq 180/110$ and one or more of:

- Visual disturbances
- Dizziness
- Weakness or numbness
- Confusion
- Headache
- Chest pain [→27](#)
- Difficulty breathing worse on lying flat or with leg swelling [→94](#)
- BP  $> 200/120$

### Management:

- Avoid antihypertensives as these can cause a severe drop in BP and a stroke. Discuss with specialist whether to give BP-lowering treatment before referral.
- Refer urgently.

## Approach to the patient not needing urgent attention



<sup>1</sup>Diabetes, high cholesterol, smoker, BMI  $> 25$ , waist circumference  $> 88$  cm (woman) or  $> 102$  cm (man) or parent/sibling with premature CVD (man  $< 55$  years or woman  $< 65$  years).

# Hypertension: routine care

## Assess the patient with hypertension

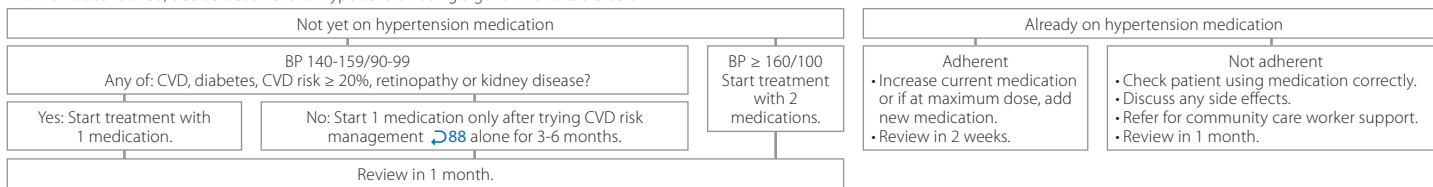
Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	Manage symptoms on symptom pages. Ask about symptoms of heart failure <a href="#">↗94</a> , ischaemic heart disease <a href="#">↗96</a> or stroke/TIA <a href="#">↗95</a> .
BP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check 2 readings at every visit.</li> <li>For correct method <a href="#">↗92</a>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If BP &lt; 140/90 (&lt; 150/90 if ≥ 60 years), BP is <b>controlled</b>: continue current treatment and review 6 monthly.</li> <li>If BP ≥ 140/90 (≥ 150/90 if ≥ 60 years), BP is <b>not controlled</b>: decide treatment below. If ≥ 180/110: also check if needs urgent attention <a href="#">↗92</a>.</li> </ul>
CVD risk	At diagnosis, then depending on risk	Assess CVD risk <a href="#">↗87</a> . If < 10% with CVD risk factors or 10-20% reassess after 1 year, if > 20% reassess after 6 months.
Eyes for retinopathy	At diagnosis, then yearly and if visual problems	If new retinopathy, visual problems or cataracts, refer.
Glucose	At diagnosis, then yearly	Check glucose <a href="#">↗89</a> . If known diabetes <a href="#">↗90</a> .
eGFR	At diagnosis, then yearly	If eGFR < 60mL/min/1.73m <sup>2</sup> , discuss with specialist.
Urine dipstick	At diagnosis, then yearly	If blood or protein on dipstick, refer to doctor and repeat dipstick at next visit. If glucose on dipstick, screen for diabetes <a href="#">↗89</a> .
Random total cholesterol	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At diagnosis, then yearly</li> <li>3 months after starting simvastatin</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If cholesterol ≥ 8mmol/L start simvastatin as below and refer for further assessment.</li> <li>If repeat cholesterol &gt; 5mmol/L increase simvastatin as below. If already on 40mg daily discuss with specialist.</li> </ul>
ECG	At diagnosis, then yearly	If abnormal, discuss with doctor.

## Advise the patient with hypertension

- Help patient to manage his/her CVD risk [↗88](#). Emphasise salt restriction ≤ 1 teaspoon/day, weight reduction and smoking cessation. If patient smokes tobacco [↗104](#).
- Advise patient to avoid NSAIDs (e.g. ibuprofen) and combined oral contraceptive [↗112](#). If pregnant or planning pregnancy, discuss with specialist.
- Explain importance of adherence and that patient will need lifelong hypertension care to prevent stroke, heart disease and kidney disease. If newly diagnosed, refer for community care worker support.

## Treat the patient with hypertension

- Give **simvastatin**<sup>1</sup> if CVD, cholesterol ≥ 8mmol/L, diabetes in patient ≥ 40 years or CVD risk > 20%. Start 20mg daily. If repeat cholesterol > 5mmol/L increase to 40mg daily.
- Give **aspirin** 150mg daily if patient has CVD. Avoid if peptic ulcer, dyspepsia, kidney or liver disease.
- If BP is not controlled, decide treatment for hypertension using algorithm and table below:



Medication	Decide which medication to use	Start dose	Maximum dose	Side effects
<b>Hydrochlorothiazide</b>	First-line therapy. Avoid in gout, severe liver/kidney disease. Discuss if impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes or raised cholesterol.	12.5mg daily	50mg daily or in 2 divided doses	Impaired glucose tolerance, gout attack, gastrointestinal disturbances
<b>Enalapril</b>	Use first if diabetes with proteinuria or kidney disease. Avoid if previous angioedema. Add to hydrochlorothiazide if patient needs > 1 medication.	5mg daily or in 2 divided doses	40mg daily in 2 divided doses	Cough (common, discuss with doctor), dizziness, angioedema (swelling tongue, lips, face, difficulty breathing: stop enalapril immediately <a href="#">↗22</a> ).
<b>Amlodipine</b>	Use if peripheral vascular disease. Discuss if patient has heart failure.	2.5mg daily	10mg daily	Dizziness, flushing, headache, fatigue
<b>Metoprolol</b> <sup>2</sup>	Use if ischaemic heart disease. Avoid in uncontrolled heart failure, asthma, COPD.	50mg daily	200mg daily	Tight chest, fatigue, slow pulse, headache, cold hands/feet, impotence

<sup>1</sup>Avoid simvastatin if patient on lopinavir/ritonavir or atazanavir/ritonavir, discuss with specialist. <sup>2</sup>Use immediate release preparation.

# Heart failure: routine care

The patient with heart failure has leg swelling and difficulty breathing which worsens on lying down/with effort. **A doctor must confirm the diagnosis and refer for specialist assessment.**

## Give urgent attention to the patient with heart failure and one or more of:

- Chest pain →27
- Rapid worsening of symptoms
- Respiratory rate > 30 at rest
- BP < 90/60
- New wheeze

### Management:

- Sit patient up and if oxygen saturation < 90% or oxygen saturation machine not available, give face mask oxygen.
- If systolic BP > 90: give **furosemide** 40mg slowly IV. If no response after 30 minutes, give 80mg IV; if still no better after 20 minutes, give a further 40mg IV. If IV furosemide unavailable, give orally.
- If systolic BP > 90: give sublingual **isosorbide dinitrate** 5mg even if there is no chest pain. Repeat 4 hourly.
- Refer urgently.

## Assess the patient with heart failure

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	Manage symptoms as on symptom pages. If cough or difficulty breathing →28. Refer same day if temperature ≥ 38°C, fever/chills or fainting/blackouts.
Family planning	Every visit	Discuss contraception needs →112. If pregnant or planning pregnancy, refer for specialist care.
Alcohol/drug use	Every visit	In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk ≥ 4 drinks/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any →105.
Depression	Every visit	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either →101.
Weight	Every visit	Assess changes in fluid balance by comparing with weight when patient least symptomatic.
BP and pulse	Every visit	If known hypertension →93. If not, check BP: if ≥ 140/90 →92. If new irregular pulse, refer same day.
eGFR and potassium	At diagnosis, 6 monthly	Also check 1-2 weeks after starting/increasing dose of spironolactone/enalapril. If abnormal, discuss with specialist. If potassium > 5mmol/L, stop spironolactone.
Other blood tests	At diagnosis	Check Hb, glucose (also yearly →89 to interpret results), TSH. If abnormal, discuss with specialist. Test for HIV →77.

## Advise the patient with heart failure

- Advise patient to adhere to treatment even if asymptomatic.
- Help the patient to manage his/her CVD risk →88. Emphasize salt restriction to < 1 teaspoon/day and advise regular exercise within limits of symptoms.
- Advise patient to restrict fluid intake to 1.5L/day (6 cups) and if possible to monitor weight daily. If s/he gains ≥ 2kg in 2 days, advise to return to clinic.

## Treat the patient with heart failure

- Aim to have patient on steps 1, 2 and 3. Add step 4 if patient has ongoing symptoms on steps 1-3. If uncontrolled on steps 1-4, refer to specialist.

Step	Medication	Dose	Note
1	Give <b>furosemide</b>	Start: 20-40mg daily. Use lowest dose to prevent leg swelling.	Use if moderate-severe heart failure or eGFR < 60mL/min/1.73m <sup>2</sup> . Expect response within 2-3 days.
	or <b>hydrochlorothiazide</b>	25-50 mg daily	Use if mild heart failure and eGFR ≥ 60mL/min/1.73m <sup>2</sup> . Avoid in gout, liver disease.
2	Add <b>enalapril</b>	Start 2.5 mg 12 hourly. Maximum: 20mg 12 hourly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increase gradually. Continue maximum tolerated dose.</li> <li>• Side effects: cough (common, discuss with doctor), dizziness, angioedema (stop enalapril immediately).</li> </ul>
3	Add <b>carvedilol</b>	Start 3.125mg 12 hourly. Maximum: 25mg 12 hourly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start once on enalapril and no oedema. Double dose 2 weekly. Continue maximum tolerated dose.</li> <li>• Avoid in asthma/COPD, peripheral vascular disease or if pulse &lt; 60.</li> </ul>
4	Add <b>spironolactone</b>	Start 25mg daily. Maximum: 50mg daily	Avoid if eGFR < 60mL/min/1.73m <sup>2</sup> or potassium > 5mmol/L. Stop potassium supplements.

<sup>3</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

SYMPTOMS  
CONTENTS

CHRONIC  
CONDITIONS  
CONTENTS

GENERAL  
HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC  
RESPIRATORY  
DISEASE

CHRONIC  
DISEASES  
OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

MENTAL  
HEALTH

MUSCULO-  
SKELETAL  
DISORDERS

WOMEN'S  
HEALTH

PALLIATIVE  
CARE

# Stroke: diagnosis and routine care

**Sudden onset** of one or more of the following suggests a stroke or a transient ischaemic attack (TIA):

- Weakness or numbness of the face, arm or leg, especially on one side of the body
- Difficulty speaking or understanding
- Blurred or decreased vision in one/both eyes or double vision
- Difficulty walking, dizziness, loss of balance or co-ordination

**A doctor must confirm the diagnosis of stroke.**

## Give urgent attention to the patient with a stroke/TIA:

- If oxygen saturation < 95% or oxygen saturation machine not available, give face mask oxygen.
- If glucose < 4mmol/L or unable to measure, give 25mL **glucose 50%** IV over 1-3 minutes. Repeat if glucose still < 4mmol/L after 15 minutes.
- Keep patient nil by mouth until swallowing is formally assessed.
- Give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 1L IV 4-6 hourly. If glucose  $\geq$  4mmol/L, avoid fluids containing glucose/dextrose as raised blood glucose may worsen a stroke.
- If BP  $\geq$  220/120, discuss with specialist about need for pre-referral treatment. If raised BP < 220/120, avoid treating as this may worsen stroke.
- Refer the patient:
  - Refer **urgently** for thrombolysis (to specialist stroke unit if available) if patient can reach hospital within 4 and a half hours of onset of symptoms.
  - Refer same day and give single dose **aspirin** 300mg orally (avoid if sudden onset severe headache) if patient cannot reach hospital within 4 and a half hours of onset of symptoms.

## Assess the patient with stroke/TIA

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage symptoms as on symptom pages.</li> <li>• Ask about symptoms of another stroke/TIA. Also ask about chest pain <a href="#">↪96</a> or leg pain <a href="#">↪98</a>.</li> </ul>
Depression	Every visit	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either <a href="#">↪101</a> .
Rehabilitation needs	Every visit	Refer to physiotherapy for mobility, occupational therapy for self care, speech therapy for swallowing, coughing after eating, speaking or drooling.
BP	Every visit	If known hypertension <a href="#">↪93</a> . If not, check BP: if $\geq$ 140/90 <a href="#">↪92</a> . If new hypertension, avoid starting treatment until > 48 hours after a stroke.
Glucose	At diagnosis, then yearly	Check glucose <a href="#">↪89</a> . If known diabetes <a href="#">↪90</a> .
Random total cholesterol	At diagnosis, then yearly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If total cholesterol &gt; 8mmol/L, refer to specialist.</li> <li>• Start simvastatin regardless of cholesterol level. If repeat cholesterol &gt; 5mmol/L on treatment, discuss with specialist.</li> </ul>
HIV	At diagnosis or if status unknown	Test for HIV <a href="#">↪77</a> .

## Advise the patient with stroke/TIA

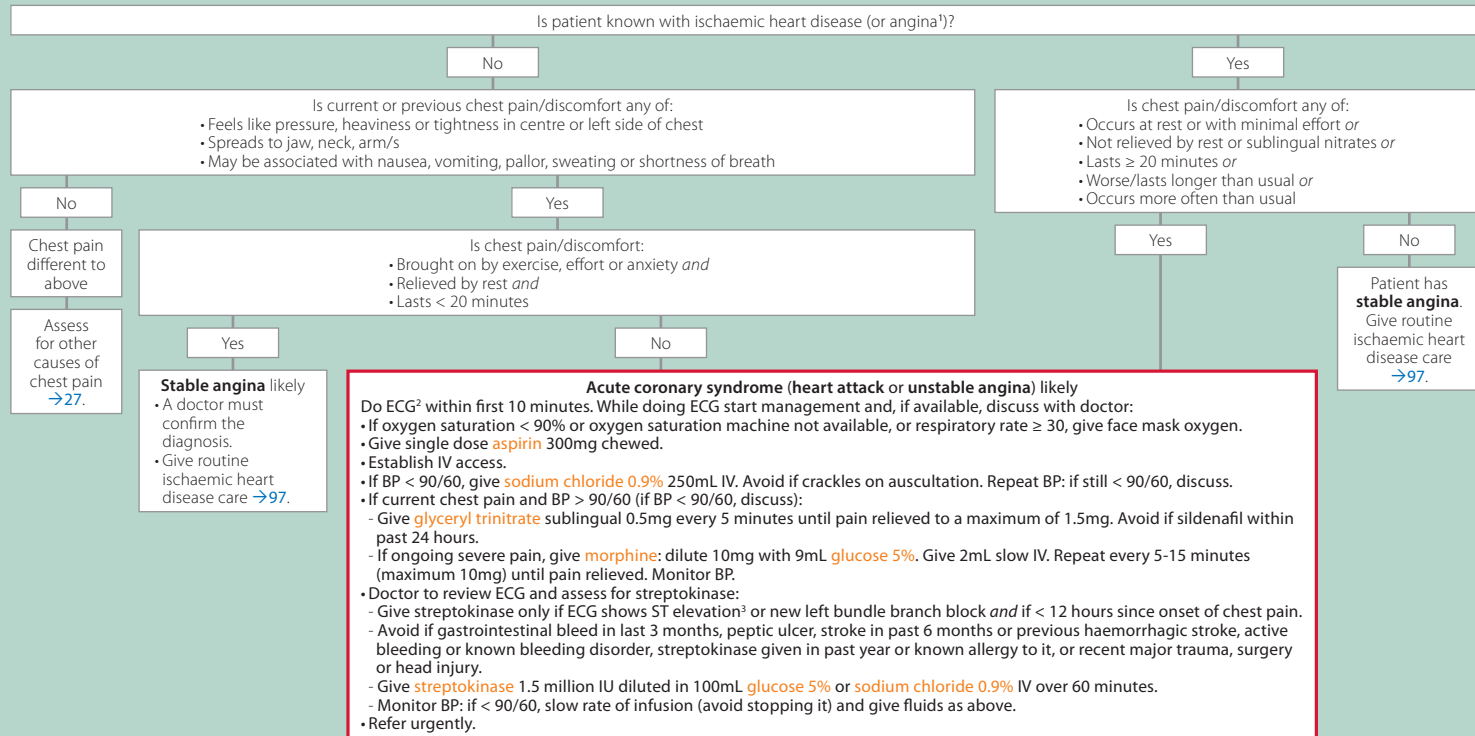
- Advise the patient to seek medical attention immediately should symptoms recur. Quick treatment of a minor stroke/TIA can reduce the risk of major stroke.
- Help patient to manage his/her CVD risk [↪88](#).
- If patient is < 55 years (man) or < 65 years (woman), advise the first degree relatives to have CVD risk assessment [↪87](#).
- Refer patient to support group/helpline.
- Avoid combined oral contraceptive. Advise other method such as IUD, injectable, progestogen-only pill or subdermal implant [↪112](#).

## Treat the patient with an ischaemic stroke/TIA

- Give **aspirin** 150mg daily for life. Avoid if haemorrhagic stroke, peptic ulcer, dyspepsia, kidney or liver disease. If heart valve disease or atrial fibrillation, refer for warfarin instead.
- Give **simvastatin**<sup>1</sup> 40mg daily at night for life, regardless of cholesterol level.

<sup>1</sup>Avoid simvastatin if patient on lopinavir/ritonavir or atazanavir/ritonavir, discuss with specialist.

# Ischaemic heart disease (IHD): initial assessment



<sup>1</sup>Chest pain caused by ischaemic heart disease. <sup>2</sup>ECG may show ST segment depression or elevation, but a normal ECG does not exclude diagnosis of unstable angina or heart attack. <sup>3</sup>ST elevation > 1mm in two or more contiguous limb leads or ST elevation > 2mm in two or more contiguous chest leads.



# Ischaemic heart disease (IHD): routine care

## Assess the patient with ischaemic heart disease

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do initial assessment if not already done ↗96.</li> <li>Ask about leg pain ↗49 and symptoms of stroke/TIA ↗95.</li> </ul>
Depression	Every visit	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either ↗101.
BP	Every visit	If known hypertension ↗93. If not, check BP: if $\geq 140/90$ ↗92.
Glucose	At diagnosis, then yearly	Check glucose ↗89. If known diabetes ↗90.
Random total cholesterol	At diagnosis, then yearly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If total cholesterol <math>&gt; 8\text{mmol/L}</math>, refer to specialist.</li> <li>Start simvastatin regardless of cholesterol level. If repeat cholesterol <math>&gt; 5\text{mmol/L}</math> on treatment, discuss with specialist.</li> </ul>

## Advise the patient with ischaemic heart disease

- Help the patient to manage his/her CVD risk ↗88.
- Patient can resume normal daily and sexual activity 6 weeks after heart attack if symptom free.
- Emphasize the importance of lifelong adherence to medication. Ensure patient knows how to use isosorbide dinitrate as below.
- Advise patient to avoid NSAIDs (e.g. ibuprofen), as they may precipitate chest pain or a heart attack.
- If patient is  $< 55$  years (man) or  $< 65$  years (woman), advise first degree relatives to have CVD risk assessment ↗87.

## Treat the patient with ischaemic heart disease

- Give **aspirin** 150mg daily for life. Avoid if peptic ulcer, dyspepsia, kidney or liver disease.
- Give **simvastatin**<sup>1</sup> 40mg daily at night for life, regardless of cholesterol level.
- Give **metoprolol** (immediate release) 50mg 12 hourly, even if no chest pain/discomfort. Avoid in asthma/COPD uncontrolled heart failure, pulse  $< 50$ , systolic BP  $< 100$ .
- If patient also has hypertension, diabetes or chronic kidney disease, give **enalapril** 5mg daily and increase slowly to 20mg daily. Avoid in angioedema.
- If patient has angina, treat using stepwise approach as in table below: if angina persists 4 weeks after starting/changing medication, increase dose to maximum, then add next step. Ensure patient is adherent before increasing treatment.

Step	Medication	Dose	Maximum dose	Note
1	<b>Glyceryl trinitrate</b> and <b>Metoprolol</b> (immediate release)	0.5mg sublingual with chest pain and before exertion	3 doses of 0.5mg with each episode of chest pain	If chest pain on exertion, rest and take 1st dose. If chest pain persists, take a further 2 doses 5 minutes apart. If no better 5 minutes after 3rd dose, patient must seek attention urgently.
		50mg 12 hourly	200mg 12 hourly	Avoid metoprolol in asthma/COPD, uncontrolled heart failure, pulse $< 50$ , systolic BP $< 100$ or side effects (headache, cold hands/feet, impotence, tight chest, fatigue) are intolerable. Use amlodipine instead.
2	<b>Amlodipine</b>	5mg in the morning	10mg daily	Avoid in heart failure, discuss with specialist.

**If metoprolol and amlodipine contra-indicated/not tolerated or chest pain/discomfort persists on full treatment, refer to specialist.**

<sup>1</sup>Avoid simvastatin if patient on lopinavir/ritonavir or atazanavir/ritonavir, discuss with specialist.

# Peripheral vascular disease (PVD): diagnosis and routine care

- Peripheral vascular disease is characterised by claudication: muscle pain in legs or buttocks on exercise that is relieved by rest. Leg pulses are reduced and skin may be cool, shiny and hairless.
- Refer the patient newly diagnosed with peripheral vascular disease for specialist assessment.

## Give urgent attention to the patient with peripheral vascular disease and one or more of:

- Sudden severe leg pain at rest with any of the following in the leg: numbness, weakness, pallor, no pulse: **acute limb ischaemia** likely
- Leg pain occurring at rest, ulcer or gangrene on leg: **critical limb ischaemia** likely
- Pulsatile mass in abdomen with abdominal/back pain or BP < 90/60: **ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm** likely

### Management:

- **Ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm** likely: avoid giving IV fluids even if BP < 90/60 (raising blood pressure may worsen the rupture).
- Refer urgently.

## Assess the patient with peripheral vascular disease

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage symptoms as on symptom pages. Ask about chest pain <a href="#">↔96</a> and symptoms of stroke/TIA <a href="#">↔95</a>.</li> <li>• Document the walking distance before onset of claudication.</li> </ul>
BP	Every visit	If known hypertension <a href="#">↔93</a> . If not, check BP: if $\geq 140/90$ <a href="#">↔92</a> .
Legs and feet	Every visit	Check for pain, pulses, sensation, deformity, skin problems. For foot screen and foot care education <a href="#">↔47</a> .
Abdomen	Every visit	If a pulsatile mass felt, refer for assessment for possible abdominal aortic aneurysm.
Glucose	At diagnosis, then yearly	Check glucose <a href="#">↔89</a> . If known diabetes <a href="#">↔90</a> .
Random total cholesterol	At diagnosis, then yearly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If total cholesterol &gt; 8mmol/L, refer to specialist.</li> <li>• Start simvastatin regardless of cholesterol level. If repeat cholesterol &gt; 5mmol/L on treatment, discuss with specialist.</li> </ul>

## Advise the patient with peripheral vascular disease

- Help the patient to manage his/her CVD risk [↔88](#).
- Advise the patient to keep legs warm and below heart level (especially at night), and to avoid decongestant medications that may constrict blood vessels.
- If patient smokes tobacco [↔104](#). Support patient to change [↔127](#).
- Advise patient that physical activity is an important part of treatment. It increases the blood supply to the legs and may significantly improve symptoms.
- If patient is < 55 years (man) or < 65 years (woman), advise the first degree relatives (parents, siblings, children) to have CVD risk assessment [↔87](#).

## Treat the patient with peripheral vascular disease

- Advise brisk exercise for 30 minutes at least 3 times a week (preferably daily). Advise patient to pause and rest whenever claudication develops.
- Give **simvastatin**<sup>1</sup> 40mg daily at night for life, regardless of cholesterol level. Avoid in pregnancy, liver disease.
- Give **aspirin** 150mg daily for life. Avoid if peptic ulcer, dyspepsia, kidney or liver disease.

- Refer to specialist at diagnosis (start medications and exercise while waiting for appointment) and if pain interferes with activities of daily living after 3 months of medication and exercise.
- **Review 3 monthly until stable (coping with activities of daily living and able to work), then 6 monthly.**

<sup>1</sup>Avoid simvastatin if patient on lopinavir/ritonavir or atazanavir/ritonavir, discuss with specialist.

# Epilepsy: routine care

- If the patient is fitting →13 to control the fit. If the patient is not known with epilepsy and has had a fit →13 to assess and manage further.
- **Epilepsy is a doctor diagnosis** in the patient who has had at least 2 definite fits with no identifiable cause. If new fits after meningitis, stroke or head trauma; or focal seizures, discuss with specialist.

## Assess the patient with epilepsy

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	Manage symptoms as on symptom pages.
Fit frequency	Every visit	Review fit diary. Assess if fits prevent patient from leading a normal lifestyle.
Adherence	Every visit, if fits occur	Assess attendance and pill counts. If still fitting on treatment consider doing drug level.
Side effects	Every visit	Side effects (see below) may explain poor adherence. Weigh up side effects with fit control or consider changing medication.
Other medication	At diagnosis, if fits occur	Check if patient is on other medication like TB treatment, ART or contraceptive. See below for interactions and discuss with doctor if needed.
Alcohol/drug use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• At diagnosis</li> <li>• If fits occur or adherence poor</li> </ul>	In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk ≥ 4 drinks/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any →105.
Family planning	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If patient is pregnant or planning pregnancy, refer to specialist.</li> <li>• Assess contraception needs →112. Avoid oral contraceptive and subdermal implant if on phenytoin<sup>2</sup>.</li> </ul>
Drug level	Only if needed	Check drug level if unsure about adherence, patient uncontrolled on maximum dose of anti-convulsant medication or signs of toxicity (see below).

## Advise the patient with epilepsy

- Educate about epilepsy and need for adherence to treatment. Advise patient to keep a fit diary to record frequency of fits.
- Refer to support group and help patient to get a medical bracelet.
- Advise avoiding lack of sleep, alcohol/drug use, dehydration and flashing lights. These may trigger a fit.
- Advise avoiding dangers like heights, fires, swimming alone, cycling on busy roads, operating machinery. Avoid driving until fit free for 1 year.
- Advise patient there are many medications that interfere with anti-convulsant treatment (see below) and to discuss with doctor when starting any new medication.
- Advise patient to use reliable contraception and to seek advice if planning a pregnancy.

## Treat the patient with epilepsy

- A single medication is best. Giving 2 anti-convulsant medications together is a specialist decision.
- If still fitting on treatment, increase dose as below if patient is adherent, there is no alcohol/drug use and no interactions with other medications.
- If still fitting after 1 month on maximum dose or side effects intolerable, start new medication and increase as below until fit free. Then taper off old medication over 1 month. If unsure, discuss.

Medication	Dose	Note
<b>Valproic acid</b>	Start 600mg daily in 2 divided doses. Increase daily dose by 200mg every 3 days to maintenance dose of 1-2 g daily in divided doses. Maximum dose: 2.5g daily.	Avoid if liver problem, pregnant or a woman of childbearing age unless on reliable contraception. Use as first choice in patient on ART. Side effects: drowsiness, dizziness, weight gain, temporary hair loss. Drug interactions: zidovudine, aspirin.
<b>Phenytoin</b>	Start 150mg daily. If needed, increase gradually every week to maintenance dose of 300mg daily or in divided doses. Maximum dose: 600mg daily.	Avoid in pregnancy. Side effects: coarse facial features, facial hair (avoid in women if possible), drowsiness, large gums. Toxicity: balance problem, double vision, slurred speech. Drug interactions: TB treatment, ART, furosemide, fluoxetine, fluconazole, theophylline, oral and subdermal contraceptive.

- If fit free review 3 monthly. Doctor to review monthly the patient who is uncontrolled until improves. If still uncontrolled after trying 2 medications for 1 month each, refer.
- Consider stopping treatment if no fits for 2 years. Reduce dose gradually over 2 months.

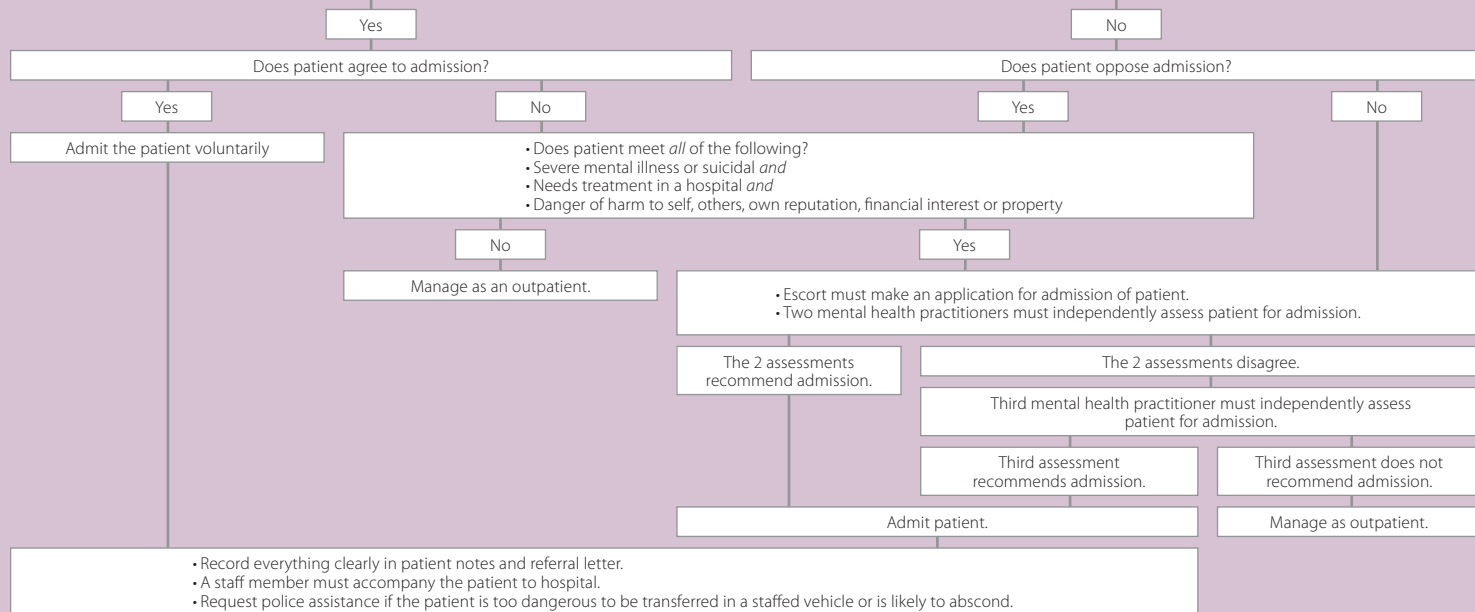
<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer. <sup>2</sup>Advise patient to use condoms consistently or offer switch to IUD or injectable contraceptive.

# Admit the mentally ill patient

Assess the mentally ill patient first on appropriate symptom or chronic condition pages.

## Approach to the mentally ill patient in need of hospital admission:

- Before sedating the patient (if needed) fully inform patient in his/her own language about reasons for admission and treatment.
- Assess if the patient can give informed consent: the patient understands that s/he is ill, is needing treatment and can communicate his/her choice to receive treatment:



# Depression: diagnosis

**Has patient had 1 or more of the following core features of depression for at least 2 weeks?**

- Depressed mood most of the day, nearly every day
- Loss of interest or pleasure in activities that are usually pleasurable

Yes

**Has patient had 5 or more of the following features of depression for at least 2 weeks?**

- Depressed mood most of the day, nearly every day
- Loss of interest or pleasure in activities that are usually pleasurable
- Fatigue or loss of energy
- Disturbed sleep or sleeping too much
- Change in appetite or weight
- Feeling guilty or worthless
- Reduced concentration or indecisiveness
- Visible agitation or restlessness or talking or moving more slowly than usual
- Ideas or acts of self-harm or suicide

No

Yes: does the patient have difficulty carrying out ordinary work, domestic or social activities?

No

Yes

**Check for anaemia**

If pallor, check Hb. If < 12.5g/dL, discuss with doctor.

**Check for thyroid disease**

Check TSH. If abnormal, refer to doctor.

**Screen for substance abuse**

In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk ≥ 4 drinks<sup>1</sup>/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any →105.

**Check for medication side effects**

Review medication: prednisolone, efavirenz, metoprolol, metoclopramide, theophylline and contraceptives can cause depression. Discuss with specialist.

No

Continue to assess and manage the stressed or miserable patient →67.

One or more of above

Discuss with doctor or specialist.

None of above: does the patient have any psychotic symptoms<sup>2</sup>?

Yes

Refer same day.

No: has patient previously had a diagnosis of bipolar disorder or symptoms of mania: 3 or more of the following, that have lasted at least 1 week and interfered with ordinary work, domestic or social activities?

- Elevated mood and/or irritability
- Decreased need for sleep
- Inappropriate social behaviour
- Easily distracted
- Increased activity, feeling of increased energy, talkative, rapid speech
- Impulsive/reckless behaviour like excess spending, thoughtless decisions, sexual indiscretion
- Inflated self esteem

No: has there been a major loss or bereavement within last 6 months?

Yes

Yes: does patient have ideas of suicide or self-harm, feelings of worthlessness or is s/he talking or moving unusually slowly?

No

**Bipolar disorder likely**

Discuss/refer.

No: has patient had depression in the past?

Yes

No

Yes

Provide support →67.

**Depression likely →102.**

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer. <sup>2</sup>Psychotic symptoms include any of: hallucinations (hearing voices/seeing things that are not there); delusions: (unusual/bizarre beliefs not shared by society; beliefs that thoughts are being inserted or broadcast); disorganised speech (incoherent or irrelevant speech); behaviour that is disorganised or catatonic (inability to talk, move or respond).

# Depression and/or anxiety: routine care

## Assess the patient with depression and/or generalised anxiety

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Assess symptoms of depression and anxiety. If no better after 8 weeks of treatment or worse on treatment, discuss/refer.</li> <li>Manage other symptoms as on symptom pages.</li> </ul>
Self-harm	Every visit	Asking a patient about thoughts of self-harm/suicide does not increase the chance of this. If patient has suicidal thoughts or plans <a href="#">↪64</a> .
Mania	Every visit	If abnormally happy, energetic, talkative, irritable or reckless, discuss/refer.
Anxiety	At diagnosis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If excessive worry causes impaired function/distress for at least 6 months with <math>\geq 3</math> of: muscle tension, restlessness, irritability, difficulty sleeping, poor concentration, tiredness: <b>generalised anxiety disorder</b> likely.</li> <li>If anxiety is induced by a particular situation/object (phobia) or is repeated sudden fear with physical symptoms and no obvious cause (panic), discuss/refer.</li> <li>Has patient ever had a bad experience that is causing nightmares, flashbacks, avoidance of people/situations, jumpiness or a feeling of detachment? If yes <a href="#">↪68</a>.</li> </ul>
Dementia	At diagnosis	If for at least 6 months $\geq 1$ of: memory problems, disorientation, language difficulty, less able to cope with daily activities and work/social function: consider <b>dementia</b> <a href="#">↪108</a> .
Alcohol/drug use	Every visit	In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk $\geq 4$ drinks <sup>1</sup> /session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any <a href="#">↪105</a> .
Side effects	Every visit	Ask about side effects of antidepressant medication <a href="#">↪103</a> .
Stressors	Every visit	Help identify the domestic, social and work factors contributing to depression or anxiety. If patient is being abused <a href="#">↪68</a> . If recently bereaved <a href="#">↪67</a> .
Family planning	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Discuss patient's contraception needs <a href="#">↪112</a>.</li> <li>If pregnant or breastfeeding, doctor to discuss risks: the risk to baby from untreated depression may outweigh any risk from antidepressants. If possible, avoid antidepressants in first trimester of pregnancy. Ensure counselling/support and follow-up 2 weekly until stable. If possible, discuss with specialist.</li> </ul>

## Advise the patient with depression and/or generalised anxiety

- Explain that depression is a very common illness and can happen to anybody. It does not mean that a person is lazy or weak. A person with depression cannot control his/her symptoms.
- Explain that thoughts of self-harm and suicide are common. Advise patient that if s/he has these thoughts, s/he should not act, but tell a trusted person and return for help immediately.
- Educate the patient that anti-depressants can take 4-6 weeks to start working. Explain that there may be some side effects, but these usually resolve in the first few days.
- Emphasise the importance of adherence even if feeling well. Advise patient that s/he will likely be on treatment for at least 9 months and it is not addictive. Advise not to stop treatment abruptly.
- Help the patient to choose strategies to get help and cope:

### Get enough sleep

If patient has difficulty sleeping [↪69](#).



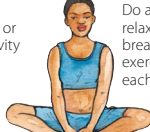
### Encourage patient to take time to relax:



Spend time with supportive friends or family.



Find a creative or fun activity to do.



Do a relaxing breathing exercise each day.



### Get active

Regular exercise may help.



### Access support

Link patient with helpline or support group.

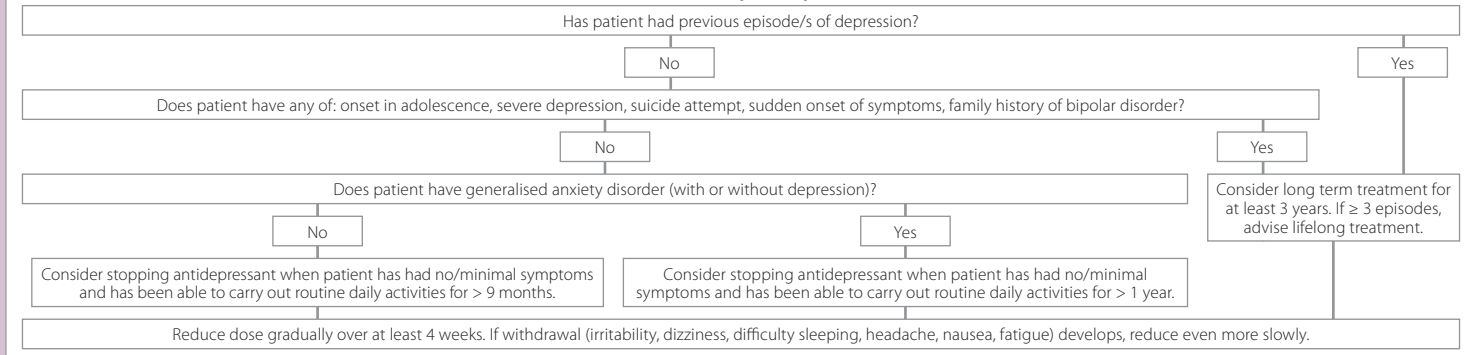
<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

### Treat the patient with depression and/or generalised anxiety

- Refer patient for counselling, ideally psychological interventions like cognitive behavioural therapy or interpersonal therapy if available, and to social worker and/or helpline/support group.
- Discuss benefits of anti-depressants for depression and generalised anxiety disorder. Respect the patient's decision if s/he declines antidepressants.
- If generalised anxiety disorder or features of anxiety<sup>1</sup> when starting antidepressant, consider **diazepam** 2-5mg daily as needed, for up to 10 days. Avoid if patient is known to use substances.
- Continue antidepressant for at least 9 months. Increase dose as needed according to response:

Medication	Dose	Note	Side effects
<b>Fluoxetine</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start 20mg alternate days for 1 week then increase to 20mg daily in the morning.</li> <li>• If partial or no response after 4 weeks, increase by 20mg every 2 weeks, up to 60mg/day.</li> </ul>	Discuss with specialist if patient has epilepsy, liver or kidney disease. Monitor glucose more often in diabetes.	Changes in appetite and weight, headache, restlessness, difficulty sleeping, nausea, diarrhoea, sexual problems
<b>Amitriptyline</b>	Start 25mg at night. Increase by 25mg every 5 days, up to 150mg/day (or 100mg/day if > 65 years).	Use if fluoxetine contraindicated. Avoid if suicidal thoughts (can be fatal in overdose), heart disease, urinary retention, glaucoma, epilepsy.	Dry mouth, constipation, difficulty urinating, blurred vision, sedation

### Plan when to stop antidepressant



**Review 2 weekly, even if not on antidepressants, until symptoms get better, then monthly. If no better after 8 weeks, refer.**

<sup>1</sup>Patient has felt nervous, anxious or panicky or been unable to stop worrying or thinking too much over the past month.

# Tobacco smoking

## Assess the patient who smokes tobacco

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ask about symptoms that might suggest cancer: cough/difficulty breathing ↗28, urinary symptoms ↗44 or weight loss ↗14.</li> <li>• Ask about chest pain ↗27, leg pain ↗49, new sudden onset of any of: asymmetric weakness of face, arm or leg; numbness, difficulty speaking or visual disturbance ↗21.</li> <li>• Manage other symptoms as on symptom pages.</li> </ul>
Use	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ask about number of cigarettes/day, activities associated with smoking and previous attempts at stopping.</li> <li>• If recently stopped, ask about challenges and advice below.</li> </ul>
Stressors	Every visit	Help identify the domestic, social and work factors contributing to smoking tobacco. Assess and manage stress ↗67.
COPD	At diagnosis	If difficulty breathing when walking fast/up a hill, consider COPD ↗83. If known COPD ↗86
CVD risk	At diagnosis	Assess and manage CVD risk ↗87

## Advise the patient who smokes tobacco

- Ask if patient is willing to discuss tobacco smoking. For tips on how to communicate effectively ↗126.
- Advise patient that stopping tobacco smoking is the most important action s/he can take to improve health, quality of life and increase life expectancy.
- Educate patient that nicotine is a very addictive substance and stopping can be difficult, resulting in withdrawal symptoms (see below). Nicotine replacement may help reduce these symptoms.
- Advise that most smokers make several attempts to stop before they are successful.

### If patient is not ready to stop in the next month:

- Discuss risks to patient (worsening asthma, infertility, heart attack, stroke, COPD, cancer) to spouse (lung cancer, heart disease) and to children (low birth weight, asthma, respiratory infections).
- Help the patient identify benefits of stopping tobacco smoking like saving money, improved health, taste, sense of smell and appearance and being a positive role model for children.
- Help the patient identify barriers to stopping tobacco smoking and possible solutions.
- Ask if patient is ready to stop smoking tobacco in the next month. If not ready to stop, encourage patient to return, use helpline or support group when ready to stop.

### If patient is ready to stop in the next month or recently stopped:

- Help the patient plan: set date to stop within 2 weeks, seek support from family and friends, support group or helpline, avoid/manage situations associated with smoking and remove cigarettes, matches, and ashtrays.
- Help manage cravings: set a time limit before giving in, advise to delay as long as possible, take a deep breath and blow out slowly (repeat 10 times).
- Educate about nicotine withdrawal symptoms: increased appetite, mood changes, difficulty sleeping/concentrating, irritability, anxiety, restlessness. These should improve after 2 weeks.

## Treat the patient who smokes tobacco and is ready to stop

- Give the above advice to stop smoking. Also give medication. Offer referral for counselling especially if previous depression or alcohol abuse.
- Help patient to choose medication based on preferences, side-effects and previous use. Avoid if pregnant or breastfeeding but stress the importance of stopping for baby's health.

Medication	Dose	Note
Nicotine gum	Start 4mg piece (if > 20 cigarettes/day) or 2mg piece (if ≤ 20 cigarettes/day) 2 hourly or as needed then gradually decrease after 6 weeks. Maximum 24 pieces/day. Use for 12 weeks.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use whenever urge to smoke tobacco. Chew slowly until nicotine taste appears, then keep inside cheek until taste disappears then chew again. Repeat for 30 minutes then discard (not swallow). Avoid food/drink other than water for 15 minutes before and during use.</li> <li>• Avoid if uncontrolled heart disease, recent heart attack. Side effects: mouth irritation, jaw soreness, heartburn, nausea, hiccups.</li> </ul>
Nicotine patch	Start 21mg daily (if > 10 cigarettes/day) or 14mg daily (if ≤ 10 cigarettes/day) for 6 weeks. Decrease by 7 mg every 2 weeks. Use for 8-10 weeks.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Apply new patch same time daily. Apply immediately after removing adhesive strip to clean, dry, hairless, intact skin. Rotate patch site (trunk, upper arm).</li> <li>• Avoid if uncontrolled heart disease, recent heart attack, skin disease. Side effects: skin irritation, difficulty sleeping, vivid dreams.</li> </ul>

**Review patient weekly for 1 month, then monthly for 3 months, then after 6 months. If attempt to stop is unsuccessful, doctor to consider extending treatment duration. Stop medication after 4 weeks if patient continues to smoke tobacco.**



# Alcohol/drug use

Assess the patient who uses any drugs or drinks alcohol in way that that puts him/her at risk of harm/dependence. This may be binge drinking or daily drinking. If patient smokes tobacco [104](#).

## Assess the patient with unhealthy alcohol use or any drug use

Assess	Note
Symptoms	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If recently reduced/stopped use and is restless, agitated, difficulty sleeping, confused, difficulty sleeping, confused, hallucinating, sweating, tremors, headache or nausea/vomiting, treat for likely <b>withdrawal</b> <a href="#">66</a>.</li> <li>• If aggressive/violent or disruptive behaviour <a href="#">65</a>.</li> <li>• If patient has suicidal thoughts or plans <a href="#">64</a>.</li> </ul>
Unhealthy/harmful use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If drinks &gt; 14 drinks/week or ≥ 4 drinks/session, this increases the risk of harm and dependence.</li> <li>• Use is <b>harmful</b> if it has caused physical (like injuries, liver disease, stomach ulcer), mental (like depression), social (relationship, legal or financial) harm or risky sexual behaviour.</li> </ul>
Dependence	Patient is <b>dependent</b> if ≥ 3 of: strong need to use substance; difficulty controlling use; withdrawal on stopping/reducing; tolerance (needing more); neglecting other interests; continued use despite harm.
Stressors	Help identify the domestic, social and work factors contributing to alcohol/drug use. Ask about reasons for his/her substance use. If patient is being abused <a href="#">68</a> .
Depression	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either <a href="#">101</a> .

## Advise the patient with unhealthy alcohol use or any drug use

- Assess and manage stress [67](#).
- If pregnant/planning pregnancy or breastfeeding, advise to avoid alcohol/drugs completely. Alcohol/drugs can harm the developing baby.
- Suggest patient seeks support from close relatives/friends who do not use alcohol/drugs, a support group or a helpline. Refer patient to social worker, psychologist or counsellor.
- Discuss risks/harms that using alcohol/drugs may cause. Allow patient to decide for him/herself to stop or cut down. Support the patient to make a change [127](#).

### Unhealthy alcohol use without dependence

- If pregnant, harmful drinking, previous dependence or contraindication (like liver damage, mental illness), advise to stop alcohol completely. Avoid drinking places and keeping alcohol at home.
- If none of above and patient chooses to continue alcohol, advise low-risk use: ≤ 2 drinks/day and avoid alcohol at least 2 days/week.

### Any drug use without dependence

- Advise to stop using illegal or misusing prescription drugs completely.
- If patient chooses to continue, advise to reduce harm: avoid injections or use sterile injection technique, test regularly for HIV and hepatitis.

### Alcohol/drug dependence

- Advise that alcohol/drugs need to be stopped slowly. If stopped suddenly, withdrawal effects can be harmful.
- Detoxification (below) will safely wean the body from alcohol or drug/s.

## Doctor to treat the patient with alcohol/drug dependence with the help of a carer

- Arrange inpatient detoxification if previous withdrawal delirium/fits or failed detoxification, pregnant, chronic medical or mental illness, homeless/no social support, dependent on opioid (like codeine) or > 1 drug.
- Doctor can do outpatient detoxification if none of the above. Ensure patient has a close relative/friend to act as carer during programme.

Substance	Detoxification programme - write out programme for patient and chosen carer. Stop if patient resumes alcohol/drug use.
Alcohol (start only if no alcohol in past 8 hours)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Give <b>thiamine</b> 100mg orally daily for duration of detoxification programme.</li> <li>• Give <b>diazepam</b> orally: Day 1: 10mg 6 hourly. Day 2-3: 5-10mg 8 hourly. Day 4: 5mg 12 hourly. Then taper to stop over days 5 and 6 if needed.</li> </ul>
Cannabis/stimulant drug	If needed, treat anxiety, restlessness, irritability or difficulty sleeping with <b>diazepam</b> orally: Day 1: 5mg 8 hourly. Day 2: 5mg 12 hourly. Day 3: 5mg at night.
Benzodiazepines	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Avoid suddenly stopping benzodiazepines. Reduce dose very gradually, withdrawal may take months.</li> <li>• Replace benzodiazepine patient is taking with equivalent dose of diazepam. If unsure of equivalent dose, discuss with specialist. Decrease <b>diazepam</b> by 5-10mg each week until 40mg daily, then decrease by 2.5-5mg each week.</li> </ul>

**If harmful use, review in 1 month then as needed. If on detoxification programme, review daily until stable. Advise to return immediately if any problems.**

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

SYMPTOMS  
CONTENTS

CHRONIC  
CONDITIONS  
CONTENTS

GENERAL  
HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC  
RESPIRATORY  
DISEASE

CHRONIC  
DISEASES  
OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

MENTAL  
HEALTH

MUSCULO-  
SKELETAL  
DISORDERS

WOMEN'S  
HEALTH

PALLIATIVE  
CARE

# Schizophrenia: diagnosis and routine care

## • Ensure a specialist confirms the diagnosis of schizophrenia.

• Consider schizophrenia in the patient who (if no mental health or alcohol/drug disorder) has for at least 6 months had difficulty carrying out ordinary work, domestic or social activities *and* for at least 1 month has had  $\geq 2$  of the following symptoms of psychosis:

- Delusions: unusual/bizarre beliefs not shared by society; beliefs that thoughts are being inserted or broadcast.
- Hallucinations: usually hearing voices or seeing things that are not there.
- Disorganised speech: incoherent or irrelevant speech

- Behaviour that is disorganised or catatonic (inability to talk, move or respond) or negative symptoms: lack of emotion or facial expression, no motivation, not moving or talking much, social withdrawal.

## Assess the patient with schizophrenia

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assess symptoms of psychosis above. If symptoms of psychosis and:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Aggressive/violent <a href="#">↗65</a>.</li> <li>- Varying levels of consciousness over hours/days or temperature <math>\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}</math>, <b>delirium</b> likely <a href="#">↗66</a>.</li> <li>- Patient has interrupted treatment: restart intramuscular treatment <a href="#">↗107</a> and explore reasons for poor adherence (like side effects, substance abuse).</li> <li>- Good adherence to optimal doses of treatment, discuss/refer.</li> <li>• Manage other symptoms as on symptom pages.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Self-harm	Every visit	If patient has suicidal thoughts or plans <a href="#">↗64</a> . If intent to harm others, alert intended victim/s if possible.
Stressors	Every visit	Help identify stressors that may worsen or cause symptoms to recur. If patient is being abused <a href="#">↗68</a> .
Alcohol/drug use	Every visit	In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk $\geq 4$ drinks <sup>1</sup> /session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any <a href="#">↗105</a> .
Family planning	Every visit	Discuss patient's contraception needs <a href="#">↗112</a> . If patient is pregnant, planning pregnancy or breastfeeding, refer to specialist.
Medication	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ask about treatment side effects <a href="#">↗107</a>.</li> <li>• Ask about adherence. If non-adherent, restart medication at same dose, explore reasons for stopping treatment and refer for community care worker support.</li> <li>• Discuss with specialist if patient is on medication that might cause acute psychosis, like prednisolone, efavirenz, moxifloxacin and terizidone.</li> </ul>
Weight (BMI)	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BMI = weight (kg) <math>\div</math> height (m) <math>\div</math> height (m).</li> <li>• If gaining weight, assess and manage CVD risk <a href="#">↗87</a> and discuss with specialist about possible alternative schizophrenia treatment.</li> </ul>
Glucose	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• At diagnosis, then yearly</li> <li>• Also 4 monthly if gaining weight</li> </ul>	Check glucose <a href="#">↗89</a> .
Random total cholesterol	At diagnosis, then 2 yearly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If cholesterol <math>\geq 8</math>, refer.</li> <li>• If cholesterol <math>&lt; 8</math> but increasing, discuss with specialist about possible alternative schizophrenia treatment.</li> </ul>
HIV	At diagnosis or if status unknown	Test for HIV <a href="#">↗77</a> . If HIV positive, avoid efavirenz, discuss treatment with specialist.
Syphilis	At diagnosis	If positive, treat <a href="#">↗41</a> and refer.

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

### Advise the patient with schizophrenia and the patient's carer

- Educate carer/family and patient: the patient with schizophrenia often lacks insight into the illness and may be hostile towards carers. S/he may have difficulty functioning, especially in high stress environments.
- Encourage carer to be supportive and avoid trying to convince patient that beliefs or experiences are false or not real. Avoid hostility and criticism towards the patient.
- Advise patient to avoid alcohol/drug use and encourage regular sleep routine.
- Advise the patient to continue social/educational/occupational activities if possible. Refer to social worker to help find educational or employment opportunities.
- Consider housing/assisted living support and try to avoid long-term hospitalisation.
- Emphasize importance of treatment adherence and to return immediately if symptoms of psychosis return/worsen.
- Refer for community care worker support.
- Refer patient and carer to support group and cognitive behavioural therapy if available. Arrange support for the carer and refer for therapy if available.

### Treat the patient with schizophrenia

- Give medication as in the table below. Use lowest effective dose. Give one medication at a time. Allow 6 weeks on typical effective dose before considering medication ineffective.
- If repeated adherence problems, consider changing from oral to long-acting intramuscular medication.
- If unsure or more than typical effective dose needed, discuss with specialist.

Medication	Starting dose	Typical effective dose	Note
Risperidone	1mg orally 12 hourly	4-6mg/day	Use as first line treatment.
Haloperidol	0.5mg orally 12 hourly	5-20mg/day	Increase dose daily to 8 hourly and by 0.5mg/dose until psychosis symptoms resolve.
Chlorpromazine	25mg orally 8 hourly	75-300 mg/day	If sedation is a problem, give up to 75mg/day as a single dose at night once symptoms controlled.
Fluphenazine decanoate	12.5mg deep IM injection every 2-4 weeks	12.5-50mg every 2-4 weeks	Discuss with specialist how to taper oral medication before starting.

### Look for and manage schizophrenia treatment side effects

Urinary retention	Stop treatment and refer same day.		Breast enlargement, nipple discharge	Discuss with specialist whether to change medication.
Blurred vision	Refer same day.		Amenorrhoea	Discuss with specialist whether to change medication.
Painful muscle spasms (acute dystonic reaction)	Usually within 2 days of starting medication. Give <b>biperiden</b> 2mg IM. If needed, repeat after 30 minutes, up to 4 doses in 24 hours. Refer same day.		Dizziness/fainting on standing	Usually when starting/increasing dose. Usually self-limiting over hours to days. Advise patient to stand up slowly.
Extra-pyramidal side effects	Abnormal involuntary movements	Stop treatment and discuss/refer same day.	Dry mouth/eyes	Usually self-limiting.
	Slow movements, tremor or rigidity	May occur after weeks or months on treatment, discuss/refer.	Constipation	Usually self-limiting. Advise high fibre diet and adequate fluid intake.
	Muscle restlessness	Stop treatment and discuss/refer same day.		

- Review the patient with schizophrenia 3 monthly once stable. Advise patient to return immediately if symptoms of psychosis.
- If restarting treatment after patient has interrupted treatment, review after 2 weeks, sooner if symptoms worsen.

# Dementia: diagnosis and routine care

## •Ensure a doctor confirms the diagnosis of dementia.

- Consider dementia in the patient who for at least 6 months has the following, which are getting worse:
  - Problems with memory: test this by asking patient to repeat 3 common words immediately and then again after 5 minutes.
  - Disorientated to time (unsure what day/season it is) and place (unsure of shop closest to home or where the consultation is taking place).
  - Difficulty with speech and language (unable to name parts of the body).
  - Struggles with simple tasks, decision making and carrying out daily activities.
  - Is less able to cope with social and work function.
  - If patient has HIV, has difficulty with coordination.

## Assess the patient with dementia with the help of the carer

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If recent change in mood, energy/interest levels, sleep or appetite, consider depression and discuss/refer.</li> <li>• If suicidal thoughts or plans <a href="#">D64</a>.</li> <li>• If sudden deterioration in behaviour <a href="#">D66</a>.</li> <li>• If hallucinations (seeing or hearing things), delusions (unusual/bizarre beliefs), agitation or wandering, discuss/refer to mental health practitioner.</li> <li>• Manage other symptoms as on symptom pages.</li> </ul>
Side effects	If on treatment	If abnormal movements or muscle restlessness, stop treatment and discuss/refer same day. If painful muscle spasms, manage below.
Vision/hearing problems	Every visit	Refer to optometry/audiology services for testing and proper devices.
Nutritional status	Every visit	Ask about food and fluid intake. If BMI < 18.5 arrange nutritional support. BMI = weight (kg) ÷ height (m) ÷ height (m).
CVD risk	At diagnosis, then depending on risk	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assess CVD risk <a href="#">D87</a>.</li> <li>• If CVD risk &lt; 10% with CVD risk factors or 10-20%, reassess after 1 year; if &gt; 20% reassess after 6 months.</li> </ul>
Palliative care	Every visit	If any of: bed-bound, unable to walk and dress alone, incontinence, unable to talk meaningfully or do activities of daily living, also give palliative care <a href="#">D122</a> .
HIV	At diagnosis or if status unknown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Test for HIV <a href="#">D77</a>. If HIV positive, give routine care <a href="#">D78</a>. If new HIV diagnosis with dementia, discuss with specialist.</li> <li>• If HIV positive, test for coordination problems: with non-dominant hand as quickly as possible (allow patient to practice twice): open and close the first 2 fingers widely. On a flat surface, clench a fist, then place palm down, then on the side of the 5th digit.</li> </ul>
Syphilis	At diagnosis	If positive, treat <a href="#">D41</a> and refer.
Thyroid function	At diagnosis	Check TSH. If abnormal, refer.

## Advise the patient with dementia and his/her carer

- Discuss what can be done to support the patient, carer/s and family. Identify local resources, social worker, counsellor, support group. Refer to occupational therapy if available.
- Discuss with carer if respite or institutional care is needed. Advise the carer/s to:
  - Give regular orientation information (day, date, weather, time, names)
  - Use simple short sentences.
  - Remove clutter and potential hazards at home.
  - Stimulate memories and give current information with newspaper, radio, TV, photos.
  - Maintain a routine.
  - Maintain physical activity and plan recreational activities.

## Treat the patient with dementia

- HIV-associated dementia often responds well to ART [D78](#).
- If psychotic symptoms, night-time disturbance, wandering or persistent aggression or anxiety, discuss with specialist about starting **risperidone**<sup>1</sup> 0.25mg orally 12 hourly or **haloperidol**<sup>1</sup> 0.5mg orally 12 hourly. If painful muscle spasms develop: give **biperiden** 2mg IM. If needed, repeat after 30 minutes, up to 4 doses in 24 hours and refer same day. If > 65 years, avoid benzodiazepines (lorazepam, diazepam, midazolam).

## Review the patient with dementia every 6 months.

<sup>1</sup>Avoid if Parkinson's disease.

# Chronic arthritis: diagnosis and routine care

- If patient has episodes of joint pain and swelling that completely resolve in between, consider **gout** →110.
- The patient with chronic arthritis has had continuous joint pain for at least 6 weeks. Distinguish mechanical osteoarthritis from inflammatory rheumatoid arthritis:

## Osteoarthritis likely if:

- Affects joints only.
- Weight-bearing joints and possibly hands and feet
- Joints may be swollen but not warm.
- Stiffness on waking lasts less than 30 minutes.
- Pain is worse with activity and gets better with rest.

## Inflammatory arthritis likely if:

- May be systemic: weight loss, fatigue, poor appetite, muscle wasting.
- Hands and feet are mainly involved.
- Joints are swollen and warm.
- Stiffness on waking lasts more than 30 minutes.
- Pain and stiffness get better with activity.

**If inflammatory arthritis likely or uncertain of diagnosis, refer for specialist assessment.**

### Assess the patient with chronic arthritis

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	Manage symptoms as on symptom pages.
Activities of daily living	Every visit	Ask if patient can walk as well as before, can cope with buttons and use knife and fork properly.
Sleep	Every visit	If patient has difficulty sleeping →69.
Depression	Every visit	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either →101.
Joints	Every visit	Look for warmth, tenderness and limitation in range of movement of joints.
BMI	At diagnosis	BMI = weight (kg) ÷ height (m) ÷ height (m). BMI > 25 puts stress on weight-bearing joints. Assess CVD risk →88.
CRP/Rheumatoid factor (RF)	If inflammatory arthritis likely or unsure	If CRP raised or RF positive, refer to specialist as inflammatory arthritis is more likely.
HIV	At diagnosis	Test for HIV →77.

### Advise the patient with chronic arthritis

- If BMI > 25 advise to reduce weight to decrease stress on weight-bearing joints like knees and feet. Help the patient to manage his/her CVD risk →88.
- Encourage the patient to be as active as possible, but to rest with acute flare-ups.
- Refer patient and carer for education about chronic arthritis, to available support group or helpline.
- Ensure the patient using disease modifying medication knows to have regular blood monitoring depending on the prescribed medications from the specialist clinic.

### Treat the patient with chronic arthritis

- If rheumatoid arthritis or difficulty with activities of daily living, refer to physiotherapist or occupational therapist.
- Give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed. If no response and inflammation is present in the patient with osteoarthritis, give **ibuprofen**<sup>1</sup> 400mg 6 hourly with food only as needed for up to 1 month.
- Rheumatoid arthritis must be treated early with disease modifying anti-rheumatic medication to control symptoms, preserve function, and minimise further damage.
- If specialist unavailable within 1 month and inflammatory arthritis likely, doctor to start **prednisolone** 7.5mg daily and **ibuprofen**<sup>1</sup> 400mg 6 hourly as needed with food.

**Review monthly until symptoms controlled, then 3-6 monthly. If poor response to treatment, refer to specialist.**

<sup>1</sup>Avoid if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease.

# Gout: diagnosis and routine care

- An acute gout attack tends to affect a single joint, most commonly the big toe or knee. There is a sudden onset of severe pain, redness and swelling. It resolves completely, usually within days.
- Chronic tophaceous gout tends to asymmetrically affect > 1 joint and may not be very painful. Deposits can be seen or felt at the joints and there is incomplete recovery.

## Assess the patient with gout

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	Manage symptoms as on symptom pages.
Alcohol/drug use	Every visit	In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk $\geq 4$ drinks <sup>1</sup> /session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any <a href="#">↪105</a> .
Medication	Every visit	Hydrochlorothiazide, furosemide, ethambutol, pyrazinamide and aspirin may induce a gout attack. Discuss with doctor. Avoid stopping aspirin given for CVD risk.
Joints	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Recognise the acute gout attack: sudden onset of 1-3 hot, extremely painful, red, swollen joints (often big toe or knee).</li> <li>• Recognise chronic tophaceous gout: deposits appear as painless yellow hard irregular lumps around the joints (picture).</li> </ul>
CVD risk	At diagnosis, then depending on risk	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assess CVD risk <a href="#">↪87</a>. If &lt; 10% with CVD risk factors or 10-20% reassess after 1 year, if &gt; 20% reassess after 6 months.</li> <li>• If BMI &lt; 18.5 or patient &lt; 40 years, refer within 1 month to exclude possible cancer cause for gout.</li> </ul>
eGFR	At diagnosis, then 6 monthly	If eGFR < 60mL/minute/1.73m <sup>2</sup> , discuss with specialist.
Urate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• At diagnosis</li> <li>• On allopurinol</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wait at least 2 weeks after an acute gout attack before checking urate level.</li> <li>• If on allopurinol, repeat monthly and adjust allopurinol dose until urate level &lt; 6mg/dL, then repeat 6 monthly.</li> </ul>

## Advise the patient with gout

- Help the patient to manage his/her CVD risk [↪88](#).
- Give dietary advice:
  - Reduce alcohol (especially beer), sweetened fizzy drinks, seafood, offal and meat intake.
  - Increase low-fat dairy intake.
  - Avoid fasting and dehydration as they may increase the risk of an acute gout attack.
- Advise patient to avoid medication above that may induce an acute gout attack. Discuss with doctor before starting any new medication.



© Stellenbosch University

## Treat the patient with gout

### Treat the patient with an acute gout attack:

- Give **ibuprofen**<sup>2</sup> 800mg 8 hourly with food until better, then 400mg 8 hourly until 1 day after symptoms completely resolved (usually 5-7 days). If pain no better/worsens, discuss with specialist.
- If peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease, give instead **prednisolone** 40mg daily, decrease by 10mg every 3rd day until stopped. If unsure, discuss with specialist.
- If patient is already using allopurinol, avoid stopping it during an acute attack.

### Treat the patient with chronic tophaceous gout:

- Patient needs allopurinol if: > 3 attacks per year, chronic tophaceous gout, kidney stones/kidney disease caused by gout.
- Wait at least 3 weeks after an acute gout attack before starting allopurinol.
- Give **allopurinol** 100mg daily. Use smallest dose to keep urate < 6mg/dL: increase monthly by 100mg, maintenance usually 300mg daily; maximum 800mg in divided doses.

**If no response to treatment or uncertain of diagnosis, refer to specialist.**

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer. <sup>2</sup>Avoid if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease.

# Fibromyalgia: diagnosis and routine care

- Consider fibromyalgia if the patient has had general body pain above and below the waist, affecting both sides of the body for more than 3 months associated with at least 11 of 18 tender points (see picture) on palpation.
- Fibromyalgia diagnosis more likely if any of: woman, family history, fatigue, reduced ability to think and remember clearly, mood or sleep disturbances.
- Check for other causes of general body pain:
  - If weight loss [14](#).
  - Screen for a joint problem: patient to place hands behind head; then behind back. Bury nails in palm and open hand. Press palms together with elbows lifted. Walk. Sit and stand up with arms folded. If unable to do screen comfortably [46](#).
  - Check CRP, Hb, TSH and test for HIV [77](#).
- **A doctor must make or confirm the diagnosis of fibromyalgia.** Consider another diagnosis and refer if joint problem, HIV positive, blood results abnormal or uncertain of diagnosis.

Press tender points with the pressure that would blanch a fingernail. Compare with a control site on forehead.



## Assess the patient with fibromyalgia

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage symptoms as on symptom pages. Ask patient to identify the 3 symptoms that bother her/him most and focus on these.</li> <li>• Avoid dismissing all symptoms as fibromyalgia: exclude treatable and serious illness. If unsure, refer.</li> </ul>
Sleep	Every visit	If patient has difficulty sleeping <a href="#">69</a> .
Stressors	Every visit	Help identify psychosocial stressors that may exacerbate symptoms. Assess and manage stress <a href="#">67</a> .
Depression	Every visit	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either <a href="#">101</a> .
Chronic arthritis	Every visit	If patient also has chronic arthritis, give routine care <a href="#">109</a> .

## Advise the patient with fibromyalgia

- The cause is unknown but may be a result of generalised hypersensitivity of the nervous system, so patient feels more pain than others, despite normal muscles and joints.
- The patient may also have irritable bowel syndrome, tension-headache, chronic fatigue syndrome, interstitial cystitis, sleep disturbances or depression.
- Explain that treatments may help (patients will have good days and bad days), fibromyalgia does not get worse over time and is not life-threatening, but there is no cure:
  - Advise the patient against overuse of painkillers (e.g. paracetamol and ibuprofen) as they are often not helpful for fibromyalgia and may have unwanted side effects.
  - Advise patient to keep as active as possible: start with 5 minutes of gentle walking every day and build up by 1 minute a day until able to walk or run for 30 minutes at least 3 times per week.
  - Encourage good sleep habits [69](#).
  - Refer to available support group or helpline.
  - If no better with a combination of education, exercise and medication, refer for cognitive behavioural therapy if available.

## Treat the patient with fibromyalgia

- If no better with education and exercise, give **amitriptyline** 10mg at bedtime. Increase by 5mg every 2 weeks until improvement (maximum dose 75mg).
- If still symptomatic after 3 months, combine **amitriptyline** 25mg at bedtime with **fluoxetine** 20mg in the morning.

**A supportive relationship with the same health practitioner can contain frequent visits for multiple problems. Review patient 6 months once stable.**

# Contraception

## Give emergency contraception if patient had unprotected sex in past 5 days and does not want pregnancy:

- Give as soon as possible: single dose **levonorgestrel** 1.5mg orally.
  - If patient taking ART (or post-exposure prophylaxis), rifampicin or phenytoin, offer **copper intrauterine device** instead or increase single dose **levonorgestrel** to 3mg.
  - If patient vomits < 2 hours after taking levonorgestrel, repeat the dose or offer **copper intrauterine device** instead.
  - Offer to start contraceptive at same visit (if intrauterine device not chosen). Use condoms or abstain for next 7 days and check pregnancy test in 3 weeks.
- If patient chooses, insert emergency **copper intrauterine device** instead.
- Consider need for HIV and hepatitis B post-exposure prophylaxis [↗71](#).

## Assess the patient starting and using contraception

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check for symptoms of STIs: vaginal discharge, ulcers, lower abdominal pain. If present <a href="#">↗35</a>. If sexual problems <a href="#">↗43</a>.</li> <li>• If &gt; 40 years, ask about menopausal symptoms: hot flushes, night sweats, vaginal dryness, mood changes, difficulty sleeping and sexual problems <a href="#">↗121</a>. If menopausal, decide how long to continue contraceptive <a href="#">↗121</a>.</li> <li>• Manage other symptoms as on symptom pages.</li> </ul>
Adherence	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If already on contraceptive, ask about concerns and satisfaction with method.</li> <li>• If patient has missed injections or pills, manage <a href="#">↗113</a>.</li> </ul>
Side effects	Every visit	If already on contraceptive, ask about side effects of method <a href="#">↗113</a> .
Safe sex	Every visit	Ask about risky sexual behaviour: patient or regular partner has new or multiple partner/s, uses condoms unreliably or has risky alcohol/drug use <a href="#">↗105</a>
Other medication	Every visit	If on ART, TB or epilepsy treatment, check method is suitable <a href="#">↗113</a> . If not suitable, choose/change to IUD or injectable.
Vaginal bleeding	Every visit	If abnormal vaginal bleeding: if already on contraceptive, see method to manage <a href="#">↗113</a> . If not yet on contraceptive <a href="#">↗42</a> .
Weight (BMI)	First visit, then yearly	$BMI = \text{weight (kg)} \div \text{height (m)}^2$ . If BMI > 25 assess and manage CVD risk <a href="#">↗87</a> .
BP	First visit, every visit on pill or injectable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check BP <a href="#">↗92</a>.</li> <li>• If known hypertension or BP <math>\geq 140/90</math>, avoid/change from combined oral contraceptive. If BP <math>\geq 160/100</math>, also avoid/change from injectable.</li> </ul>
Breast check	First visit, then yearly	Check for lumps in breasts <a href="#">↗30</a> and axillae <a href="#">↗16</a> .
Pregnancy	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Before starting contraception, exclude pregnancy<sup>1</sup>. If pregnant <a href="#">→114</a>.</li> <li>• If pregnancy suspected (significant nausea/breast tenderness or if patient using IUD/combined oral contraceptive misses period), check pregnancy test. If pregnant <a href="#">→114</a>.</li> </ul>
HIV	Every visit	Test for HIV <a href="#">↗77</a> .
Cervical screen	When needed	Do cervical screen <a href="#">↗40</a> .

## Advise the patient starting and using contraception

- Educate patient to use contraceptive reliably. Advise to discuss concerns/problems with method and find an alternative, rather than just stopping it and risking unwanted pregnancy.
- Advise patient on pill or implant to tell clinician if starting ART, TB or epilepsy treatment as these may interfere with pill or implant effectiveness.
- If on combined oral contraceptive pill and  $\geq 72$  hours diarrhoea/vomiting, advise to use condoms or abstain (continue for 7 days once resolved).
- Demonstrate and give male/female condoms. Recommend dual contraception: one method of contraception *plus* condoms to protect from STIs and HIV.
- Encourage patient to have 1 partner at a time and if HIV negative to test for HIV between partners. Advise partner/s to be tested for HIV.
- Educate about the availability of emergency contraception (see above) and termination of pregnancy [↗115](#) to prevent unwanted pregnancy.

<sup>1</sup>If after day 7 of cycle and patient has had unprotected sex since last period, advise patient to abstain or use condoms until next period. Start contraception when period starts. If period delayed, do pregnancy test.



### Treat the patient starting and using contraception

If already using contraceptive and patient satisfied with method, check method is still suitable. If starting or changing contraceptive, help patient to choose method:

Method	Help patient to choose method	Instructions for use	Side effects
<b>Intrauterine device (IUD)</b> • <b>Copper IUD (Cu-IUD)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Effective for 10 years.</li> <li>• Fertility returns on removal.</li> <li>• Avoid if current STI, unexplained vaginal bleeding, abnormal cervix/uterus.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If inserted after day 12 of cycle, exclude pregnancy first.</li> <li>• Can be inserted within 48 hours of delivery.</li> <li>• Must be inserted/removed by trained staff.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Heavy or painful periods: reassure usually improve within 3-6 months. To assess and manage <a href="#">1042</a>. If excessive bleeding occurs after insertion or if tired and Hb &lt; 12g/dL, refer.</li> <li>• Irritation of partner's penis during sex: cut IUD strings shorter.</li> </ul>
<b>Subdermal implant</b> • <b>Etonogestrel</b> (one-rod: 3 years)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lasts for 3 years.</li> <li>• Fertility returns on removal.</li> <li>• Avoid if unexplained vaginal bleeding, previous breast cancer or active liver disease.</li> <li>• Use with caution<sup>1</sup> if on ART, rifampicin or phenytoin.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plastic rod just under skin of upper arm.</li> <li>• If inserted after day 5 of cycle, use condoms or abstain for 7 days.</li> <li>• Must be inserted/removed by trained staff.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Amenorrhoea: reassure that this is common.</li> <li>• Abnormal bleeding: common. To assess and manage <a href="#">1042</a>.</li> <li>• Acne: change to combined oral contraceptive or non-hormonal method.</li> <li>• Headaches: if severe, change to non-hormonal method.</li> <li>• Weight gain (less with progesterone-only pill)</li> <li>• Moodiness: reassure that this should resolve. In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either, consider changing method and <a href="#">1011</a>.</li> </ul>
<b>Progestogen injection</b> • <b>Medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA)</b> IM 150mg 12 weekly or • <b>Norethisterone enanthate (NET-EN)</b> IM 200mg 8 weekly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8 or 12 weekly injection</li> <li>• Fertility can be delayed for up to 1 year after last injection.</li> <li>• Avoid if unexplained vaginal bleeding, previous breast cancer, BP <math>\geq</math> 160/100, ischaemic heart disease, previous stroke, active liver disease or diabetic complications.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If started after day 5 of cycle, use condoms or abstain for 7 days.</li> <li>• No need to adjust dosing interval for ART, TB or epilepsy treatment.</li> </ul>	
<b>Progestogen-only pill (POP)</b> • <b>Levonorgestrel</b> 30mcg	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Must be motivated to take pill reliably every day.</li> <li>• Fertility returns once pill is stopped.</li> <li>• Avoid both if previous breast cancer, active liver disease or on rifampicin or phenytoin.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Must be taken every day at the same time (no more than 3 hours late).</li> <li>• If started after day 5 of cycle, use condoms or abstain for 2 days.</li> </ul>	
<b>Combined oral contraceptive (COC)</b> • <b>Ethinylestradiol/levonorgestrel</b> 30/150mcg	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use both with caution<sup>2</sup> if on ART.</li> <li>• Also avoid COC if smoker <math>\geq</math> 35 years, migraines and <math>\geq</math> 35 years or visual disturbances, postpartum<sup>3</sup>, BP <math>\geq</math> 140/90, hypertension, CVD risk <math>\geq</math> 10%, current or previous deep vein thrombosis/pulmonary embolus, previous stroke, ischaemic heart disease or diabetic complications.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Must be taken every day at the same time.</li> <li>• If started after day 5 of cycle, use condoms or abstain for 7 days.</li> <li>• If <math>\geq</math> 72 hours diarrhoea/vomiting, advise to use condoms or abstain (continue for 7 days once resolved).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Abnormal bleeding: common in first 3 months. To assess and manage <a href="#">1042</a>.</li> <li>• Breast tenderness, nausea: reassure usually resolve within 3 months.</li> <li>• Headaches: if migraines and <math>\geq</math> 35 years or visual disturbances, change to non-hormonal method.</li> <li>• Moodiness: reassure that this should resolve. In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either, consider changing method and <a href="#">1011</a>.</li> </ul>
<b>Sterilisation</b> • Tubal ligation/vasectomy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Permanent contraception</li> <li>• Surgical procedure</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refer for assessment.</li> <li>• Written informed consent is needed.</li> </ul>	Wound pain, infection or bleeding: refer.

### Manage the patient who has missed injections or pills

#### Late injection

- If  $\leq$  2 weeks (NET-EN) or  $\leq$  4 weeks (DMPA) late: give the injection.
- If  $>$  2 weeks (NET-EN) or  $>$  4 weeks (DMPA) late:
  - Exclude pregnancy. If pregnant [1114](#).
  - If not pregnant: give injection and use condoms or abstain for 7 days. If unprotected sex in past 5 days, also offer emergency contraception [1012](#).

#### Missed progestogen-only pill (> 3 hours late)

- Take pill as soon as remembered, continue pack and use condoms or abstain for 2 days.
- If unprotected sex in past 5 days, also offer emergency contraception [1012](#).

#### Missed combined oral contraceptive (> 24 hours late)

- 1 or 2 active pills missed: take 1 pill immediately and take next pill at usual time.
- $\geq$  3 active pills missed: take 1 pill immediately and take next pill at usual time. Use condoms or abstain for 7 days:
  - If pills missed in last 7 active pills of pack: omit inactive pills and start next active pill.
  - If pills missed in first 7 active pills of pack and patient has had unprotected sex in past 5 days: also offer emergency contraception [1012](#).

Follow up the patient on combined oral contraceptive pill after 3 months, then yearly. Follow up patient with IUD 6 weeks after insertion to check strings.

<sup>1</sup>The subdermal implant may be less effective on ART, rifampicin and phenytoin. Advise patient to use condoms as well. <sup>2</sup>The oral contraceptive may be less effective on ART. Advise patient to use condoms as well. <sup>3</sup>Avoid COC for 6 weeks after delivery and for 6 months if breastfeeding.

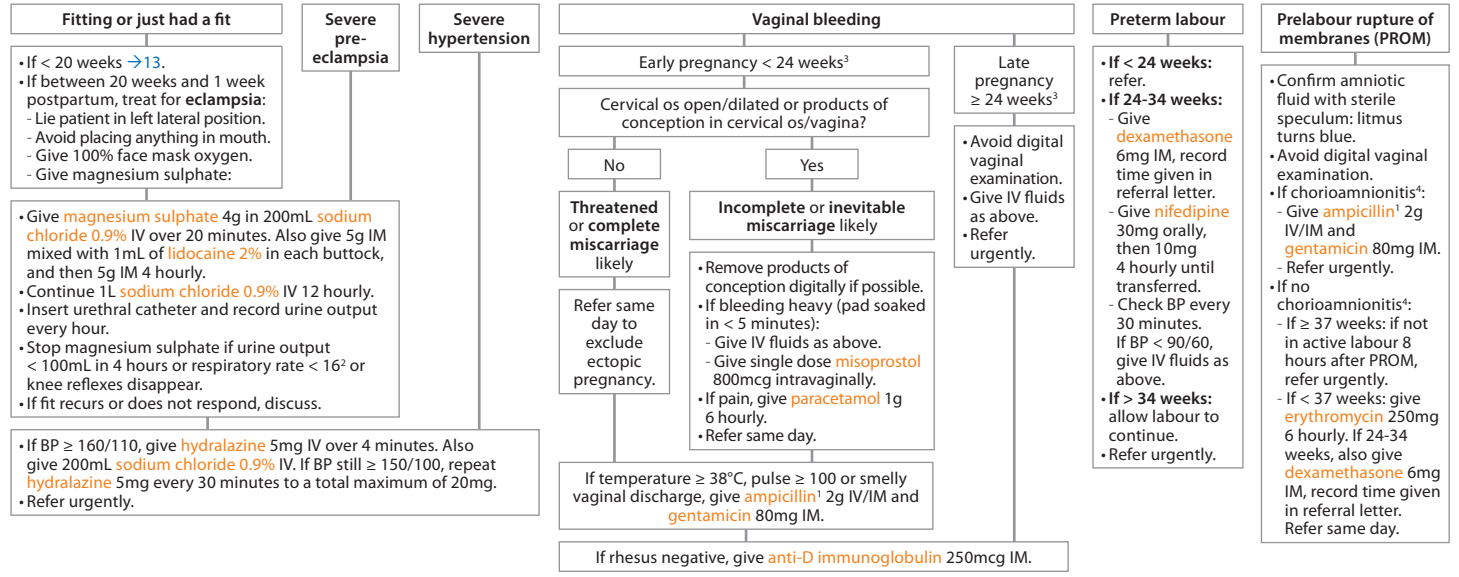
# The pregnant patient

## Give urgent attention to the pregnant patient with one or more of:

- Fitting or just had a fit
- BP  $\geq$  140/90 and persistent headache/blurred vision/abdominal pain: treat as **severe pre-eclampsia**
- BP  $\geq$  160/110 and  $\geq$  1+ proteinuria: treat as **severe pre-eclampsia**
- BP  $\geq$  160/110 without proteinuria: treat as **severe hypertension**
- Temperature  $\geq$  38°C and headache, weakness, back pain, abdominal pain
- Difficulty breathing
- Swollen painful calf
- Vaginal bleeding
- Decreased/absent fetal movements  $\rightarrow$  116
- Painful contractions < 37 weeks: **preterm labour** likely
- Sudden gush of clear or pale fluid from vagina with no contractions: **prelabour rupture of membranes (PROM)** likely

### Management:

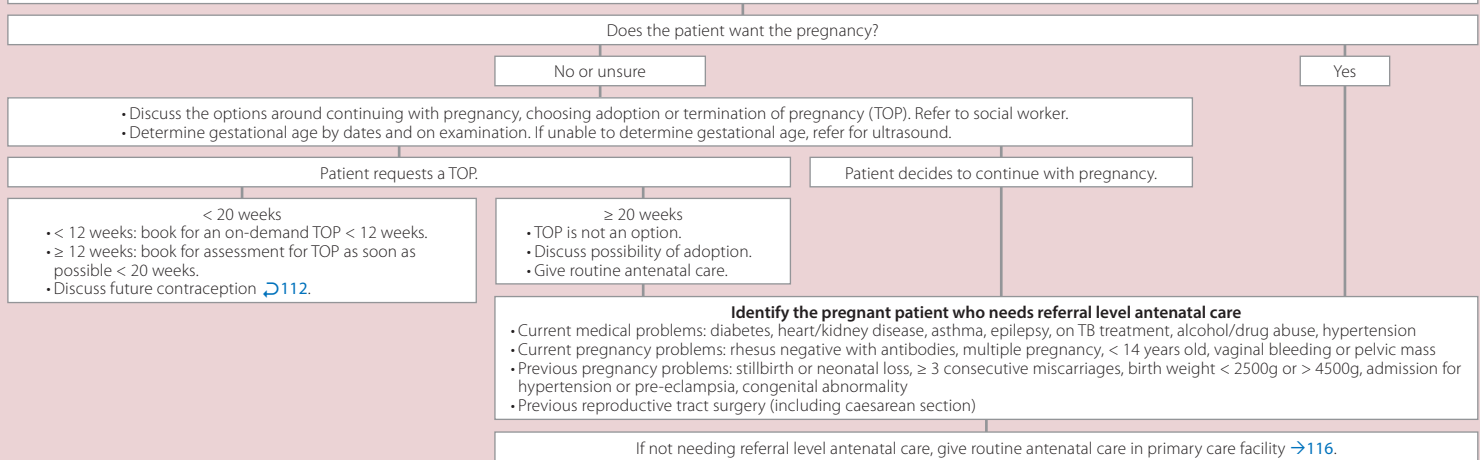
- If difficulty breathing, give face mask oxygen and refer urgently.
- If BP < 90/60, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- If temperature  $\geq$  38°C, give **ampicillin**<sup>1</sup> 2g IV/IM and **gentamicin** 80mg IM and refer urgently.



Give routine antenatal care to the pregnant patient not needing urgent attention  $\rightarrow$  115.

<sup>1</sup>If penicillin allergy, discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>If respiratory rate < 16, give **calcium gluconate** 10% 1g IV slowly over 10 minutes. <sup>3</sup>If gestation not known, manage as late pregnancy if uterus palpable above umbilicus. <sup>4</sup>Temperature  $\geq$  38°C, painful abdomen or smelly amniotic fluid.

### Approach to the newly diagnosed pregnant patient not needing urgent attention.



# Routine antenatal care

## Assess the pregnant patient at booking visit and then around 20 weeks, 26 weeks, 30 weeks, 34 weeks, 36 weeks, 38 weeks and 40 weeks.

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	Manage symptoms as on symptom pages. Check if patient needs urgent attention <a href="#">↗114</a> .
Estimated delivery date	Booking visit	Plot on antenatal card. If patient $\geq 41$ weeks, confirm EDD and refer for fetal evaluation and possible induction of labour.
Fetal movements	Every visit from 20 weeks	If decreased or absent fetal movements, patient to lie on side and record movements on kick chart. If $< 10$ movements in 2 hours, refer for further assessment.
Mental health	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either <a href="#">↗101</a>.</li> <li>• Any alcohol or drug use is risky for the baby. In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk <math>\geq 4</math> drinks<sup>1</sup>/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any <a href="#">↗105</a>.</li> </ul>
BMI <sup>2</sup>	Booking visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BMI <math>&lt; 18.5</math>: exclude TB, check weight at every visit, refer for nutritional support.</li> <li>• BMI <math>&gt; 30</math>: refer to high risk clinic and dietician. Patient to deliver at hospital.</li> </ul>
Abdomen	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If mass other than uterus in abdomen or pelvis, refer for assessment.</li> <li>• Plot symphysis-fundal height on antenatal card: measurement in centimetres is roughly gestational age in weeks. If <math>&gt; 3</math>cm discrepancy, refer.</li> <li>• If breech or non-cephalic presentation at 37 weeks, refer to high risk clinic.</li> </ul>
Vaginal discharge	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If abnormal discharge, treat for STI <a href="#">↗35</a>.</li> <li>• If sudden gush of clear or pale fluid with no contractions: prelabour rupture of membranes likely <a href="#">↗114</a>. If small amounts of clear/pale fluid, refer. Avoid digital examination.</li> </ul>
BP (BP is normal if $< 140/90$ )	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If BP <math>\geq 140/90</math>, repeat after 1 hour lying on left side. If 2nd BP normal, repeat after 2 days. If 2nd BP still raised, check urine dipstick for protein:</li> <li>- No proteinuria: start <b>methylodopa</b> 250mg 12 hourly and discuss with specialist same day. Advise to return immediately if headache, blurred vision, abdominal pain.</li> <li>- If BP <math>\geq 140/90</math> and <math>\geq 1+</math> proteinuria, refer to hospital. If BP <math>\geq 140/90</math> and symptoms or BP <math>\geq 160/110</math>, manage <a href="#">↗114</a>.</li> </ul>
Arrange ultrasound	Booking visit	Book ultrasound for 18-22 weeks.
Urine dipstick: test clean, midstream urine	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If dipstick normal with dysuria (burning urine) or if leucocytes or nitrites present, treat for complicated urinary tract infection <a href="#">↗44</a>.</li> <li>• If proteinuria, check BP:</li> <li>- BP <math>\geq 160/110</math>, manage as severe pre-eclampsia <a href="#">↗114</a>.</li> <li>- BP <math>&lt; 140/90</math> and <math>\geq 2+</math> proteinuria, refer to high risk clinic to exclude kidney disease. If BP <math>&lt; 140/90</math> and <math>&lt; 2+</math> proteinuria, reassess at next antenatal visit.</li> <li>• If glucose in the urine, do a diabetes screen.</li> </ul>
Diabetes screen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 26 weeks</li> <li>• If high risk<sup>3</sup>: also at booking visit</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• At 26 weeks, do oral glucose tolerance test<sup>4</sup>: if fasting glucose <math>\geq 5.1</math> mmol/L, after 1-hour <math>\geq 10.0</math>mmol/L or 2-hour <math>\geq 8.5</math>mmol/L, refer to high risk clinic.</li> <li>• If high risk at booking visit, check blood glucose <a href="#">↗89</a>. If diabetes, refer to high risk clinic.</li> </ul>
Haemoglobin (Hb)	Booking visit, 30 weeks, if pale	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If Hb <math>&lt; 7</math>g/dL or pallor with respiratory rate <math>&gt; 30</math>, dizziness/faintness or chest pain, refer to hospital same day.</li> <li>• If Hb 7-11g/dL, treat <a href="#">↗117</a> and reassess at next antenatal visit.</li> </ul>
Rapid rhesus	Booking visit	If rhesus negative, refer to high risk clinic. Give <b>anti-D immunoglobulin</b> 250mcg IM at 28 weeks and immediately after delivery. Also give if miscarriage, ectopic or abdominal trauma.
Syphilis	Booking visit, 30 weeks	If positive <a href="#">↗41</a> .
HIV	Booking visit, at 30 weeks if negative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Test for HIV <a href="#">↗77</a>. If patient refuses, offer test at each visit, even in early labour.</li> <li>• If HIV positive give routine care and start ART same week <a href="#">↗78</a>.</li> </ul>
HIV viral load	On ART: 6 months, 12 months, then yearly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If viral load 50-1000copies/mL, give increased adherence support and refer/discuss with an experienced ART doctor.</li> <li>• If viral load <math>&gt; 1000</math>copies/mL for 1st time, give increased adherence support <a href="#">↗80</a> and repeat viral load within 3 months.</li> <li>• If viral load <math>&gt; 1000</math>copies/mL for 2nd time, patient has virological failure: doctor to change to 2nd line ART. If already on 2nd line ART, discuss/refer.</li> </ul>

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer. <sup>2</sup>BMI = weight (kg)  $\div$  height (m)  $\div$  height (m). <sup>3</sup>High risk of gestational diabetes if any of: previous gestational diabetes, glucose in urine, family history of diabetes, BMI  $> 30$  or previous large baby  $> 4.5$ kg. <sup>4</sup>Oral glucose tolerance test: take fasting blood glucose specimen after overnight fast. Give **oral glucose** 75g in 250mL water to drink within 5 minutes. Take blood glucose specimen 1 hour and 2 hours later.

### Advise the pregnant patient

- Advise to stop smoking, drinking alcohol, using drugs and/or misusing medications. Support patient to change [↗127](#). Advise patient not to take medications unless prescribed by clinician.
- Advise patient to avoid potentially harmful foods: unpasteurised milk, soft cheeses, raw or undercooked meat, poultry, raw eggs and shellfish. Advise to cut down on caffeine.
- Discuss safe sex. Advise patient to use condoms throughout pregnancy and have only 1 partner at a time.
- Ensure patient knows the signs of a pregnancy emergency [↗114](#) and of early labour.
- Discuss contraception following delivery [↗112](#).
- Give patient advice to avoid mosquito-transmitted diseases:
  - Avoid travel to Zika/dengue/malaria areas.
  - If in Zika/dengue/malaria area:
    - Use insect repellent and cover exposed skin with long-sleeved shirt/pants and hat.
    - Stay and sleep in screened or air-conditioned room if possible.
    - Sleep under insecticide dipped net.
- If HIV, help the patient decide on feeding choice depending on preference, social/family support, availability and affordability of formula and access to safe clean water.
- Regardless of HIV status, encourage exclusive breastfeeding for 6 months: only breast milk (no formula, water, cereal) and if HIV-exposed, nevirapine and co-trimoxazole prophylaxis.
- Refer for support if mental health risk: previous depression/anxiety or family history, < 20 years, unwanted pregnancy, poor social/family support, no/unsupportive partner, violence at home, difficult life event in last year, undisclosed HIV.

### Treat the pregnant patient

- Give **iron/folic acid** 60mg/400mcg daily. Avoid tea/coffee 2 hours after taking tablet. If Hb  $\leq$  11g/dL, give **iron/folic acid** 60mg/400mcg 12 hourly for 3 months and reassess.
- If pregnant during winter, give **influenza vaccine**.
- Check if tetanus, diphtheria and pertussis immunisations are up to date (3 doses of tetanus/diphtheria in the past):
  - If up to date, give 1 dose of **tetanus, diphtheria, acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccine** at 27-36 weeks gestation.
  - If not up to date/unknown, give 3 doses **tetanus and diphtheria (Td) vaccine**: immediately, then after 1 and then 6 months. Ensure 1 dose also contains acellular pertussis (**Tdap**), ideally at 27-36 weeks.
- Manage the risk of pre-eclampsia if first pregnancy, hypertension, diabetes, kidney disease, twin pregnancy, BMI > 30, previous pre-eclampsia or family history, < 18 years or > 35 years, > 10 years since last pregnancy:
  - Give **elemental calcium** 1.5g daily (at different time from iron<sup>1</sup>) from 20 weeks.
  - Give **aspirin** 75mg daily from 14 weeks. Discontinue 10 days before estimated date of delivery.
- Prevent malaria in a malaria area if not on co-trimoxazole: give **sulfadoxine pyrimethamine** (500/25mg) 3 tablets at each antenatal visit at least 1 month apart, from 14 weeks.
- Give single-dose **albendazole** 400mg or **mebendazole** 500mg after 14 weeks.
- Give the HIV positive patient:
  - If stage 3 or 4 or CD4  $\leq$  350cells/mm<sup>3</sup>, give **co-trimoxazole** 160/800mg daily.
  - If on ART, continue. If on efavirenz, no need to change regimen.
  - If not on ART, start ART same week [↗81](#).

### Treat the HIV positive patient in labour

- If HIV positive on ART, continue ART throughout delivery and breastfeeding.
- If newly diagnosed HIV positive or known HIV positive and not on ART, start ART [↗81](#).
- Ensure mother gets routine HIV care after delivery [↗78](#).

### Treat the HIV-exposed baby immediately after birth

- Give the baby born to an HIV positive mother a dose of **nevirapine syrup** (10mg/mL) as soon as possible after birth according to weight: < 2.0kg: 0.2mL/kg; 2.0 - 2.5kg: 1mL;  $\geq$  2.5kg: 1.5mL.
- Decide how long to continue nevirapine syrup in baby [↗120](#).

Give postnatal care to mother and baby [↗118](#).

<sup>1</sup>Calcium can interfere with iron absorption.

# Routine postnatal care

## Give urgent attention to the postnatal patient with one or more of:

- Heavy bleeding (soaks pad in < 5 minutes): **postpartum haemorrhage** likely
- Fitting or just had a fit up to 1 week postpartum → [114](#).
- BP  $\geq$  140/90 *and* persistent headache/blurred vision/abdominal pain: treat as **severe pre-eclampsia** → [114](#).
- Feeling unwell and temperature > 38°C
- BP < 90/60
- Pulse  $\geq$  100
- Tear extending to anus or rectum
- Pallor with respiratory rate > 30, dizziness/faintness or chest pain
- Pallor with Hb < 7g/dL

### Management:

- If BP < 90/60 or bleeding with pulse  $\geq$  100, give **sodium chloride 0.9%** 250mL IV rapidly, repeat until systolic BP > 90. Continue 1L 6 hourly. Stop if breathing worsens.
- If **postpartum haemorrhage** likely:
  - Massage uterus and empty bladder (with catheter if needed).
  - Give **oxytocin** 10IU IM, then 20IU in 1L **sodium chloride 0.9%** at 200mL/hr IV.
  - Ensure placenta is delivered. If controlled cord traction fails, try manual delivery and give **ampicillin**<sup>1</sup> 2g IV/IM.
  - If uterus still soft after this, give **ergometrine**<sup>2</sup> 0.2mg IM/IV or **misoprostol** 400mcg sublingual and continue massaging uterus.
  - If still bleeding heavily, apply bimanual<sup>3</sup> or external aortic compression<sup>4</sup> or non-pneumatic anti-shock garments (if available) during transfer.
- If feeling unwell and temperature > 38°C: give **clindamycin** 150mg IM/IV and **gentamicin** 80mg IM.
- Refer urgently.

## Assess the mother and her baby 3 days, 10 days, and 6 weeks after delivery

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage mother's symptoms as on symptom pages. Manage baby's symptoms with IMCI guide.</li> <li>• Ask about urinary incontinence (leaking or dribbling urine). If still present at 6 weeks, treat for flow problem → <a href="#">44</a>.</li> </ul>
Depression	Every visit	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either → <a href="#">101</a> .
Alcohol/drug use	Every visit	In the past year, has patient: 1) drunk $\geq$ 4 drinks <sup>5</sup> /session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any → <a href="#">105</a> .
Family planning	Every visit	Assess patient's contraception needs → <a href="#">112</a> .
Baby feeding	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If breastfeeding: check for breast problems → <a href="#">30</a>. Check that baby latches well and is not mixed feeding.</li> <li>• If formula feeding: ensure correct mixing of formula and water and that it is affordable, feasible, acceptable, safe and sustainable.</li> </ul>
Baby	Every visit	Assess and manage the baby according to the IMCI guide. Ensure baby received immunisations at birth and ensure baby is immunised at 6 week visit.
Abdomen and perineum	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If perineal or abdominal wound: check healing and, if needed, remove sutures at 10 day visit.</li> <li>• If painful abdomen, smelly discharge or poorly contracted uterus: check temperature and discuss same day.</li> </ul>
BP	Every visit	Check BP. If BP $\geq$ 140/90, recheck after 1 hour rest. If BP still $\geq$ 140/90 → <a href="#">92</a> , unless $\leq$ 1 week postpartum: discuss with doctor → <a href="#">114</a> .

Continue to assess the mother and her baby → [119](#).

<sup>1</sup>If penicillin allergy, discuss with doctor. <sup>2</sup>Avoid if eclampsia, pre-eclampsia or known hypertension. <sup>3</sup>Bimanual compression: insert clenched fist into vagina, back of hand directed posteriorly, knuckles in anterior fornix. Place other hand on abdomen behind uterus and squeeze uterus firmly between hands. <sup>4</sup>External aortic compression: press down with fist just above umbilicus until femoral pulse not felt. <sup>5</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

Assess	When to assess	Note
HIV test in mother	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If not done</li> <li>• At 6 weeks</li> <li>• If breastfeeding: 3 monthly</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Test for HIV →77. If HIV positive, give routine care →78. If not on ART, start ART →81.</li> <li>• If mother tests HIV positive, do HIV PCR on baby same day and start post-exposure prophylaxis in baby while waiting for PCR result →120.</li> </ul>
HIV test in HIV-exposed baby	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 6 weeks</li> <li>• 9 months if previous test negative</li> <li>• 18 months if previous test negative</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Decide which HIV test to do: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If &lt; 9 months, do PCR. If positive, start ART and confirm result with 2nd PCR.</li> <li>- If 9 - 17 months, do rapid test. If positive, do PCR. If PCR positive, start ART and confirm result with 2nd PCR.</li> <li>- If ≥ 18 months →77.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If mother diagnosed with HIV while breastfeeding or baby unwell, do HIV test same day.</li> </ul>
Haemoglobin (Hb)	If pale	If Hb < 7g/dL, refer same day. If Hb 7-11g/dL, treat as below.
Syphilis	If not done	Test mother for syphilis: if positive, treat mother and baby →41.
Cervical screen	At 6 weeks if needed	Do cervical screen →40.

#### Advise the mother

- Encourage mother to become active soon after delivery, rest frequently and eat well. Advise mother to keep perineum clean and to change pads 4-6 hourly.
- Advise to return immediately if heavy bleeding, smelly vaginal discharge, red/smelly/oozing wound, fever, dizziness, severe headache, blurred vision, severe abdominal pain, severe calf pain or baby unwell.
- Give feeding advice:
  - Regardless of HIV status, encourage exclusive breastfeeding for 6 months: baby gets only breast milk (no formula, water, cereal) and if HIV-exposed, nevirapine/zidovudine and co-trimoxazole prophylaxis.
  - Refer to an infant feeding support group.
  - Advise the working mother to consider expressing for baby while away.
  - If patient chooses to formula feed, ensure it is affordable, feasible, acceptable, safe and sustainable. Check formula is correctly prepared. Discourage mixed feeding before age 6 months.
  - From 6 months, introduce food while continuing with feeding choice.
  - If mother HIV positive, continue breastfeeding until 1 year if mother on ART and until at least 2 years if baby diagnosed HIV positive.
  - If mother HIV negative: continue to breastfeed until at least 2 years. Explain importance of regular HIV testing while breastfeeding.
- If mother HIV positive: ensure mother knows how to give nevirapine and zidovudine syrup correctly.
- Advise that mother and baby sleep under an insecticide dipped bed net if in a malaria area.

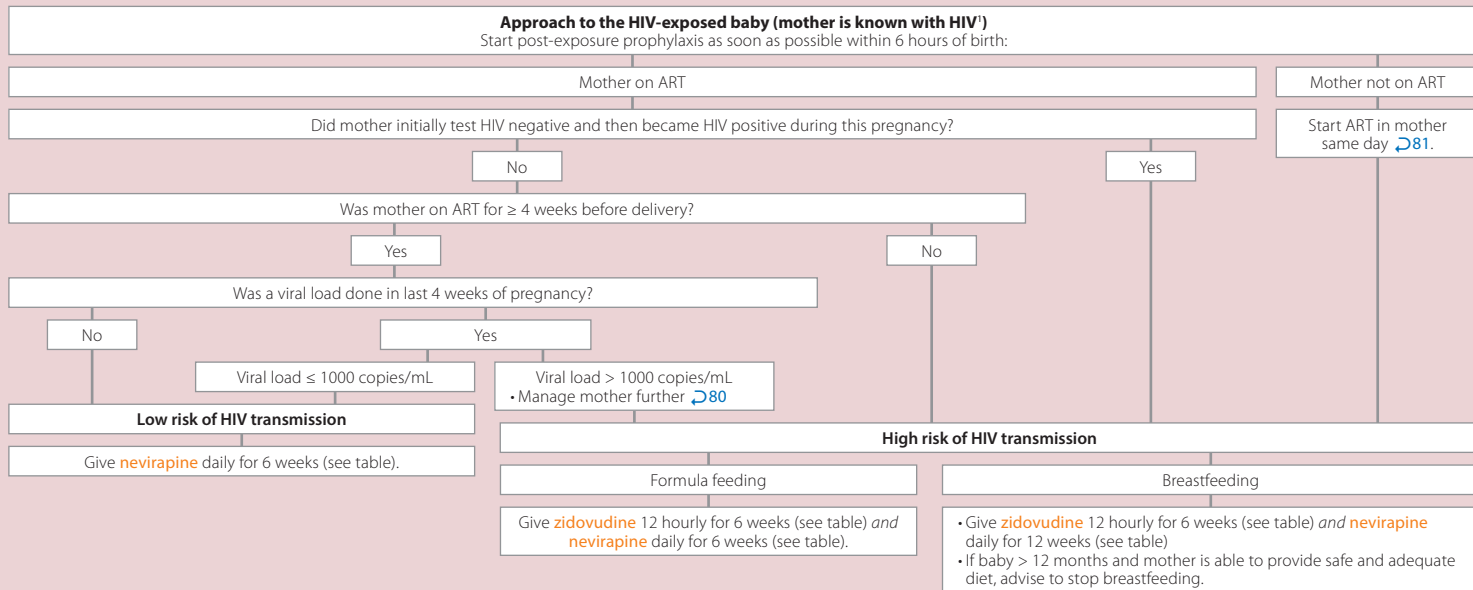
#### Treat the mother

- Continue **iron/folic acid** 60mg/400mcg daily for 3 months. If Hb 7-11g/dL, give **iron/folic acid** 60mg/400mcg 12 hourly for 3 months and reassess. Check antenatal rapid rhesus result: if rhesus negative, confirm anti-D immunoglobulin was given at delivery. If not given, give **anti-D immunoglobulin** 250mcg IM.
- Check tetanus, diphtheria and pertussis immunisations are up to date (3 doses of tetanus/diphtheria including 1 dose acellular pertussis). If not, give missed doses of **tetanus and diphtheria (Td) vaccine**, immediately, 1 and then 6 months apart. If never received tetanus, diphtheria, acellular pertussis (Tdap), ensure 1 dose also contains **acellular pertussis (Tdap)**.
- If painful perineal or abdominal wound, give **paracetamol** 1g 6 hourly as needed for up to 5 days.
- If HIV positive and not on ART, start ART →81. If mother is already on ART, continue.

#### Treat the HIV-exposed baby

Decide on choice and duration of PMTCT regimen →120.

# Prevention of mother-to-child transmission (PMTCT) of HIV



## Treat the HIV-exposed baby

- Give PMTCT: nevirapine with/without zidovudine depending on transmission risk. Dose according to weight and age (see table). If ≤ 35 weeks gestation, discuss dose.
- Start **co-trimoxazole** at 6 weeks of age. Dose according to weight (see table). Stop if HIV negative 6 weeks after last breastfeed.

### Nevirapine syrup (10mg/mL)

Birth weight (born > 35 weeks)	Age	Dose
< 2.0kg	Birth up to 6 weeks	0.2mL/kg daily
2.0-2.49kg	Birth up to 6 weeks	1mL daily
≥ 2.5kg	Birth up to 6 weeks	1.5mL daily
-	6 weeks to 12 weeks	2mL daily

### Zidovudine syrup (10mg/mL)

Birth weight (born > 35 weeks)	Age	Dose
< 2.0kg	Birth up to 6 weeks	0.4mL/kg /dose 12 hourly
2.0-2.49kg	Birth up to 6 weeks	1mL 12 hourly
≥ 2.5kg	Birth up to 6 weeks	1.5mL 12 hourly
-	6 weeks to 12 weeks	6mL 12 hourly

### Co-trimoxazole syrup (40/200mg/5mL)

Weight	Dose
3.0-5.9kg	2.5mL daily
6.0-13.9kg	5mL daily

<sup>1</sup>If mother's HIV status is unknown and mother not available, do rapid HIV test on baby. If positive, send HIV PCR test and manage as high risk above. If negative, there is no need for PMTCT.

SYMPTOMS  
CONTENTSCHRONIC  
CONDITIONS  
CONTENTSGENERAL  
HEALTH

TB

HIV

CHRONIC  
RESPIRATORY  
DISEASECHRONIC  
DISEASES  
OF LIFESTYLE

EPILEPSY

MENTAL  
HEALTHMUSCULO-  
SKELETAL  
DISORDERSWOMEN'S  
HEALTHPALLIATIVE  
CARE



# Menopause

- Exclude pregnancy before diagnosing menopause. If pregnant →114.
- Menopause is no menstruation for at least 12 months in a row. Most women have menopausal symptoms and irregular periods during perimenopause.
- If woman is < 40 years, discuss with specialist.

## Assess the menopausal patient

Assess	When to assess	Note
Symptoms	Every visit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ask about menopausal symptoms: hot flushes, night sweats, vaginal dryness, mood changes, difficulty sleeping →69 and sexual problems →43.</li> <li>• If night sweats, ask about other TB symptoms: if cough ≥ 2 weeks, weight loss or fever, exclude TB →72.</li> <li>• Manage other symptoms as on symptom pages.</li> </ul>
Depression	Every visit	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either →101.
Thyroid function	At diagnosis	If weight change, pulse ≥ 100, tremor, weakness/tiredness, dry skin, constipation or intolerance to cold or heat, check TSH. If abnormal, refer to doctor.
Vaginal bleeding	Every visit	If bleeding between periods, after sex or after being period-free for 1 year, refer within 2 weeks.
CVD risk	At diagnosis, then depending on risk	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assess CVD risk →87.</li> <li>• If &lt; 10% with CVD risk factors or 10-20% reassess after 1 year, if &gt; 20% reassess after 6 months.</li> </ul>
BP	3 monthly on hormone therapy	Check BP →92. If known hypertension →93.
Osteoporosis risk	At diagnosis	Refer for possible treatment if high osteoporosis risk: < 60 years with loss of > 3cm in height and fractures of hip/wrist/spine; previous non-traumatic fractures; corticosteroid treatment > 3 months; onset of menopause < 45 years; BMI < 18.5; > 2 alcoholic drinks/day; smoker, low physical activity.
Family planning	At diagnosis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If on combined oestrogen/progesterone pill or progesterone injection, change to non-hormonal method or progesterone only pill or subdermal implant when ≥ 50 years.</li> <li>• If on non-hormonal method, continue for 2 years after last period if &lt; 50 years and for 1 year after last period if ≥ 50 years.</li> <li>• If on progesterone only pill or subdermal implant, continue until 55 years, or if still menstruating, until 1 year after last period.</li> </ul>
Breast check	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• At diagnosis</li> <li>• Yearly on hormone therapy</li> </ul>	If any lumps found in breasts or axillae, refer same week to breast clinic.
Cervical screen	When needed	Do cervical screen →40.

## Advise the menopausal patient

- To cope with the hot flushes, advise patient to dress in layers and to decrease alcohol, avoid spicy foods, hot drinks and warm environments.
- Help patient to manage CVD risk if present →88.
- If patient is having mood changes or not coping as well as in the past, refer to counsellor, support group or helpline.
- Educate the patient about the risks, contraindications and benefits of hormone therapy and that it can be used to treat menopausal symptoms for up to 4 years. Long term use can increase risk of breast cancer, deep vein thrombosis (DVT) and cardiovascular disease.

## Treat the menopausal patient

- If menopausal symptoms interfere with daily function, treat with hormone therapy:
  - Avoid if abnormal vaginal bleeding, cancer of uterus/breast, previous DVT or pulmonary embolism, recent heart attack, uncontrolled hypertension or liver disease.
  - Give **oestradiol** 0.5-1mg daily or **conjugated oestrogens** 0.3mg daily and **medroxyprogesterone** oral 2.5mg daily (if patient has had uterus removed, give oestradiol or conjugated oestrogens only).
  - Adjust dose to control menopausal symptoms with minimal side effects.
  - If unable to take hormone therapy refer for non-hormonal treatment.
- Treat vaginal dryness and pain with sex with lubricants (avoid petroleum jelly with condoms). If no better with hormone therapy or hormone therapy contraindicated, refer.
- Review 6 monthly once on hormone therapy. Try decreasing dose/stopping if symptoms are controlled. If ≥ 4 years of hormone therapy or after the age of 60, stop treatment. If still symptomatic, discuss with specialist.

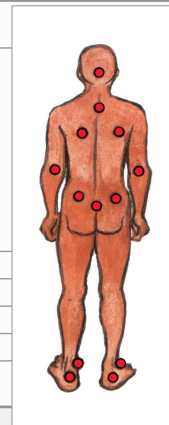
# Life-limiting illness: routine palliative care

## A patient can be given curative and palliative care at the same time. A doctor should confirm the patient with a life-limiting illness needs palliative care:

- Would you be surprised if the patient died within the next 2 years? If the answer is no, then the patient needs palliative care *and/or*
- Patient is in bed or chair for > 50% of the day, or dependent on others for care, or has had unplanned hospital admission(s) *and/or*
- Patient with advanced disease chooses palliative care only and refuses curative care *and/or*
- Patient with advanced disease not responding to treatment: heart failure, COPD, kidney or liver failure, cancer, HIV, TB, dementia or other progressive neurological disease.

## Assess the patient needing palliative care

Assess	Note
Symptoms	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage on symptom pages: constipation, nausea/vomiting, difficulty swallowing, difficulty breathing/cough, sore mouth, weight loss, incontinence, fatigue, ulcer.</li> <li>• If patient is concerned about appetite loss, reassure that this is normal at the end of life. Consider trying a short course of prednisolone <a href="#">↗123</a>.</li> </ul>
Pain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Does pain limit activity or disturb sleep? Is medication helping? Grading the pain 1-10 may help the patient decide if s/he needs to start or increase pain medication.</li> <li>• If new or sudden pain, temperature <math>\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}</math>, tender swelling, redness or pus, also treat on symptom page. If no better or uncertain of cause, discuss.</li> <li>• Assess the severity and type of pain to help the patient decide which pain medications s/he needs to start or increase <a href="#">↗123</a>:</li> <li>- Ask the patient to point on the pain scale whether his/her pain is mild, moderate or severe:</li> </ul> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ask patient to describe the pain: muscle spasms; bone pain; if burning or electric like sensations, <b>nerve pain</b> likely; if cramping, colicky pain in abdomen, <b>organ pain</b> likely.</li> </ul>
Sleep	If patient has difficulty sleeping <a href="#">↗69</a> .
Depression	In the past month, has patient: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either <a href="#">↗101</a> .
Side effects	Manage side effects on symptom pages. Nausea, confusion and sleepiness on morphine usually resolve after a few days.
Carer	Ask how the carer is coping and what support s/he needs now and in the future.
Chronic care	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assess how much patient and family understands about the condition and ask what further information the patient and carer need.</li> <li>• Assess ongoing need for chronic care in discussion with patient and health care team. Consider which medication could be discontinued.</li> </ul>
Mouth	Check oral hygiene and look for dry mouth, ulcers and thrush <a href="#">↗25</a> . If gum or tooth problem <a href="#">↗26</a> .
Pressure sores	If patient is bedridden or in a wheel chair, check common areas for damaged skin (change of colour) and pressure sores (see picture). If patient has pressure sore <a href="#">↗59</a> .

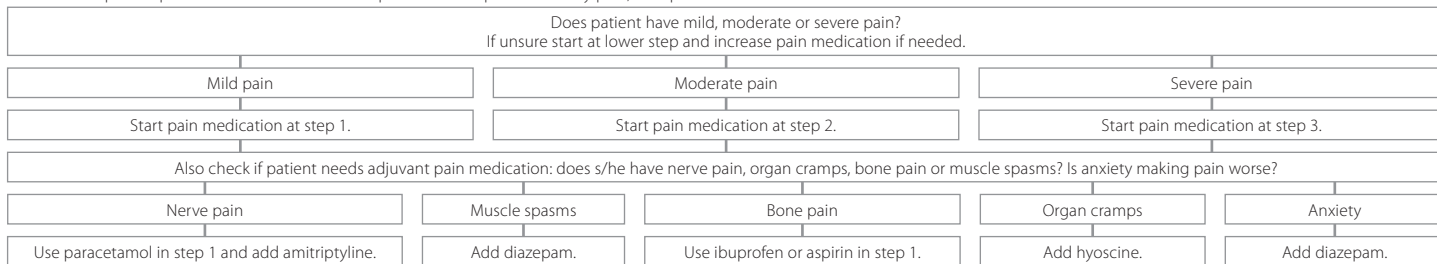


## Advise the patient needing palliative care and his/her carer

- Explain about the condition and prognosis. Explaining what is happening relieves fear and anxiety. Support the patient to give as much self care as possible.
- Refer patient and carer to available palliative carer, support group, counsellor, spiritual counsellor. Deal with bereavement issues [↗67](#).
- Prevent pressure sores if bedridden: wash and dry skin daily. Keep linen dry. Move (lift, avoid dragging) patient every 1-2 hours if unable to shift own weight. Look daily for skin colour changes (see picture).
- Prevent contractures if bedridden: at least twice a day, gently bend and straighten joints as far as they go. Avoid causing pain. Massage muscles.
- Prevent mouth disease: brush teeth and tongue regularly using toothpaste or dilute bicarbonate of soda. Rinse mouth with  $\frac{1}{2}$  teaspoon of salt in 1 cup of water after eating and at night.
- Emphasize the importance of taking pain medication regularly (not as needed) and if using codeine/morphine to use a laxative daily to prevent constipation.
- The patient's appetite will diminish as s/he gets sicker. Offer small meals frequently and allow the patient to choose what s/he wants to eat from what is available.
- Educate the carer to recognise signs of deterioration and impending death: s/he may be less responsive, become cold, sleep a lot, have irregular breathing, and will lose interest in eating.
- Discuss with patient and carer advance-care plans and preferences. Document decisions.

### Treat the patient needing palliative care

- If appetite loss is distressing the patient, give **prednisolone** 5mg daily orally in the morning to stimulate appetite. Increase up to 15mg if needed.
- Aim to have patient pain-free at rest and as alert as possible. If the patient has any pain, start pain medication:



Step	Medication	Start dose	Maximum dose	Note
Step 1 Use one of:	<b>Paracetamol</b>	1g 4-6 hourly	4g daily	If no codeine, combine paracetamol 4 hourly and aspirin 4 hourly, overlap so one is given every 2 hours.
	or <b>aspirin</b>	600mg 4 hourly	4g daily	Avoid if peptic ulcer, dyspepsia, bleeding problem, kidney or liver disease.
	or <b>ibuprofen</b>	400mg 6 hourly	2.4g daily	Give with/after food. Avoid if peptic ulcer, asthma, hypertension, heart failure or kidney disease.
Step 2 Add:	<b>Codeine</b>	30mg 4 hourly	240mg daily	If no diarrhoea, give <b>senna</b> 15mg 12 hourly and <b>docusate sodium</b> 100mg orally 12 hourly as needed for constipation.
Step 3 Stop step 2 and add:	<b>Morphine</b> (oral or rectal if unable to swallow).	5mg 4 hourly	None. If respiratory rate < 12, skip 1 dose, then halve dose.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If starting morphine, give <b>metoclopramide</b> 10mg 8 hourly for 1 week.</li> <li>• If no diarrhoea, give <b>senna</b> 15mg 12 hourly and <b>docusate sodium</b> 100mg orally 12 hourly as needed for constipation.</li> <li>• If pain persists after initial 24 hours, increase dose by 1.5-2 times. <b>If no better after 2 days, discuss.</b></li> </ul>
Add adjuvant pain medication to any step if needed.	<b>Amitriptyline</b>	25mg daily	75mg daily	Use at night. Advise it may cause dizziness, drowsiness and to avoid driving and using heavy machinery.
	<b>Diazepam</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If muscle spasms: 5mg 8 hourly</li> <li>• If anxiety: 2.5mg at night or 12 hourly</li> </ul>	15mg daily	-
	<b>Hyoscine</b>	10mg orally 8 hourly	120mg daily	-

- If pain persists/increases, increase dose to maximum and then move to next step. If pain decreases, step down.
- Review 2 days after starting or changing medication. If side effects intolerable after decreasing dose, discuss.

**Review the patient needing palliative care and his/her carer regularly.**

# Protect yourself from occupational infection

## Give urgent attention to the health worker who has had a sharps injury or splash to eye, mouth, nose or broken skin with exposure to one or more of:

- Blood
- Blood-stained fluid/tissue
- Pleural/pericardial/peritoneal/amniotic/synovial/cerebrospinal fluid
- Vaginal secretions
- Semen
- Breast milk

### Management:

- If broken skin, clean area immediately with soap and water.
- If splash to eye, mouth or nose, immediately rinse mouth/nose or irrigate eye thoroughly with water or **sodium chloride 0.9%**.
- If health worker has had contact with viral haemorrhagic fever<sup>1</sup> suspect, discuss with specialist.
- Assess need for HIV and hepatitis B post-exposure prophylaxis [↗70](#).

## Adopt measures to diminish your risk of occupational infection

### Protect yourself

#### Adopt standard precautions with every patient:

- Wash hands with soap/water or use alcohol-based cleaner after contact with patients or body fluids.
- Dispose of sharps correctly in sharps bins.

#### Wear protective gear:

- Wear gloves when handling blood, body fluids, secretions or non-intact skin.
- Wear face mask if in contact with respiratory virus suspects (N95 respirator if TB suspect).
- Wear face mask with a visor or glasses if at risk of splashes.
- Wear personal protective equipment if in contact with viral haemorrhagic fever<sup>1</sup> suspects.

#### Get vaccinated:

- Get vaccinated against hepatitis B and yearly against influenza.

#### Know your HIV status:

- Test for HIV [↗77](#). ART and IPT can decrease the risk of TB.
- If HIV positive, you are entitled to work in an area of the facility where exposure to TB is limited.

### Protect your facility

#### Clean the facility:

- Clean frequently touched surfaces (door handles, telephones, keyboards) daily with soap and water.
- Disinfect surfaces contaminated with blood/secretions with 70% alcohol or chlorine-based disinfectant.

#### Ensure adequate ventilation:

- Leave windows and doors open when possible and use fans to increase air exchange.

#### Organise waiting areas:

- Prevent overcrowding in waiting areas.
- Fast track influenza and TB suspects.

#### Manage sharps safely:

- Ensure sharps bins are easily accessible and regularly replaced.

#### Manage infection control in the facility:

- Appoint an infection control officer for the facility to coordinate and monitor infection control policies.

## Manage possible occupational exposure promptly

### Reduce TB risk

#### Identify TB suspects promptly:

- The patient with cough  $\geq 2$  weeks is a TB suspect.
- Separate TB suspect from others in the facility.
- Educate about cough hygiene and give face mask/tissues to cover mouth/nose to protect others.

#### Diagnose TB rapidly:

- Fast track TB workup and start treatment as soon as diagnosed.

#### Protect yourself from TB:

- Wear an N95 respirator (not a face mask) if in contact with an infectious TB patient.

### Reduce risk of respiratory viruses (including influenza)

- Wash hands with soap and water.
- Wear a face mask over mouth and nose during procedures on patient.
- Encourage patient to cover mouth/ nose with a tissue when coughing/sneezing, to dispose of used tissues correctly and to wash hands regularly with soap/water.
- Advise patient to avoid close contact with others.

<sup>1</sup>Suspect viral haemorrhagic fever in patient who lived in or travelled to an endemic area or had contact with confirmed viral haemorrhagic fever in past 21 days and has fever and  $\geq 1$  of: bloody diarrhoea, bleeding from gums, bleeding into skin, eyes.

# Protect yourself from occupational stress

Experiencing pressure and demands at work is normal. However, if these demands exceed knowledge and skills and challenge your ability to cope, occupational stress can occur.

## Give urgent attention to the health worker with occupational stress and one or more of:

- Alcohol or drug intoxication at work
- Aggressive or violent behaviour at work
- Inappropriate behaviour at work
- Suicidal thoughts or behaviour [↪64](#)
- Arrange assessment same day with mental health practitioner.

### Protect yourself

#### Look after your health:

- Get enough sleep.
- Exercise, eat sensibly, minimise alcohol and don't smoke [↪88](#).
- Get screened for chronic conditions.

#### Look after your chronic condition if you have one:

- Adhere to your treatment and your appointments.
- Don't diagnose and treat yourself.
- If you can, confide in a trusted colleague/manager.

#### Manage stress:

- Delegate tasks as appropriate, develop coping strategies.
- Talk to someone (friend, psychologist, mentor) or access helpline.
- Do a relaxing breathing exercise each day.
- Find a creative or fun activity to do.
- Spend time with supportive friends or family.

#### Have healthy work habits:

- Manage your time sensibly.
- Take scheduled breaks.
- Remind yourself of your purpose as a clinician.
- Be sure you are clear about your role and responsibilities.

### Adopt measures to diminish your risk of occupational stress

#### Protect your team

#### Decide on an approved way of behaving at work:

- Communicate effectively with your patients and colleagues [↪126](#).
- Treat colleagues and patients with respect.
- Support each other. Consider setting up a staff support group.
- Instead of complaining, rather focus on finding solutions to problems.

#### Cope with stressful events:

- Develop procedures to deal with events like complaints, harassment/bullying, accidents/mistakes, violence or death of patient or staff member.

#### Look at how to make the job less stressful:

- Examine the team's workload to see if it can be better streamlined.
- Identify what needs to be changed to make the job easier and frustrations fewer: equipment, drug supply, training, space, décor in work environment.
- Discuss each team member's role. Ensure each one has say in how s/he does his/her work.
- Support each other to develop skills to better perform your role.

#### Celebrate:

- Acknowledge the achievements of individuals and the team.
- Organise or participate in staff social events.

### Identify occupational stress in yourself and your colleagues:

#### Possible alcohol or drug problem

- In the past year, have you/colleague: 1) drunk  $\geq 4$  drinks<sup>1</sup>/session, 2) used illegal drugs or 3) misused prescription or over-the-counter medications? If yes to any [↪105](#).
- Smells of alcohol.

#### Change in mood

- Indifferent, tense, irritable or angry
- In the past month, have you/colleague: 1) felt down, depressed, hopeless or 2) felt little interest or pleasure in doing things? If yes to either [↪101](#).

#### Recent distressing event

- Diagnosis of chronic condition
- Bereavement
- Needlestick injury
- Traumatic event

#### Poor attendance at work

- Frequent absenteeism

#### Marked decline in work performance

- Reduced concentration
- Fatigue

The health worker with any of the above may have substance abuse, stress, depression/anxiety or burnout and might benefit from referral for assessment and follow-up.

<sup>1</sup>One drink is 1 tot of spirits, or 1 small glass (125mL) of wine or 1 can/bottle (330mL) of beer.

# Communicate effectively

- Communicating effectively with your patient during a consultation need not take much time or specialised skills.
- Try to use straightforward language and take into account your patient's culture and belief system.
- Integrate these four communication principles into every consultation:

## Listen

Listening effectively helps to build an open and trusting relationship with the patient.

### Do

- Give all your attention
- Recognise non-verbal behaviour
- Be honest, open and warm
- Avoid distractions e.g. phones

### The patient might feel:

- 'I can trust this person'
- 'I feel respected and valued'
- 'I feel hopeful'
- 'I feel heard'

### Don't

- Talk too much
- Rush the consultation
- Give unwanted advice
- Interrupt

### The patient might feel:

- 'I am not being listened to'
- 'I feel disempowered'
- 'I am not valued'
- 'I cannot trust this person'

## Discuss

Discussing a problem and its solution can help the overwhelmed patient to develop a manageable plan.

### Do

- Use open ended questions
- Offer information
- Encourage patient to find solutions
- Respect the patient's right to choose

### The patient might feel:

- 'I choose what I want to deal with'
- 'I can help myself'
- 'I feel supported in my choice'
- 'I can cope with my problems'

### Don't

- Force your ideas onto the patient
- Be a 'fix-it' specialist
- Let the patient take on too many problems at once

### The patient might feel:

- 'I am not respected'
- 'I am unable to make my own decisions'
- 'I am expected to change too fast'

## Empathise

Empathy is the ability to imagine and share the patient's situation and feelings.

### Do

- Listen for, and identify his/her feelings e.g. 'you sound very upset'
- Allow the patient to express emotion
- Be supportive

### The patient might feel:

- 'I can get through this'
- 'I can deal with my situation'
- 'My health worker understands me'
- 'I feel supported'

### Don't

- Judge, criticise or blame the patient
- Disagree or argue
- Be uncomfortable with high levels of emotions and burden of the problems

### The patient might feel:

- 'I am being judged'
- 'I am too much to deal with'
- 'I can't cope'
- 'My health worker is unfeeling'

## Summarise

Summarising what has been discussed helps to check the patient's understanding and to agree on a plan for a solution.

### Do

- Get the patient to summarise
- Agree on a plan
- Offer to write a list of his/her options
- Offer a follow-up appointment

### The patient might feel:

- 'I can make changes in my life'
- 'I have something to work on'
- 'I feel supported'
- 'I can come back when I need to'

### Don't

- Direct the decisions
- Be abrupt
- Force a decision

### The patient might feel:

- My health worker disapproves of my decisions'
- 'I feel resentful'
- 'I feel misunderstood'

# Support the patient to make a change

Use the five-A's approach to help the patient make a change in behaviour to help avoid or lessen a health risk:

## Ask the patient about the risks

- Identify with the patient the risk/s to his/her health.
- Ask what the patient already knows about these risks and how they will affect the patient's health.

## Alert the patient to the facts

- Request permission to share more information on this risk.
- Use a neutral, non-judgemental manner. Avoid prescribing what the patient must do.
- Build on what the patient already knows or wants to know.
- Discuss results of tests or examination that indicate a risk.
- Link the risk to the patient's health problem.

## Assess the patient's readiness to change

- Assess the patient's response about the information on his/her risk. 'What do you think/feel about what we have discussed?'
- Use the scale to help patient assess the importance of this issue for him/her. Also rate how confident s/he feels about making a change.

Not at all important or confident

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

Very important/very confident

- Ask the patient why s/he rated importance/confidence at this number and not lower. Ask what might help improve this rating.
- Summarise the patient's view. Ask how ready s/he feels to make a change at this time.

## Assist the patient with change

### If the patient is ready to change:

- Assist the patient to set a realistic change goal.
- Explore the factors that may help the patient to change or may make it difficult.
- Help the patient plan how s/he will fit the change into the routine of the day.  
Encourage patient to use strategies s/he used successfully in the past.

### If the patient is not ready to change:

- Respect the patient's decision.
- Invite patient to identify the pros and cons of change.
- Acknowledge patient's concerns about change.
- Explore ways of overcoming the difficulties preventing change.
- Offer more information or support if the patient would like to consider the issue further.

## Arrange support and follow up

- Offer referral to counselor and available support services (social worker, health promoter, community care worker, helpline).
- Identify a friend, partner, or relative to support the patient and if possible attend clinic visits.
- Document decision and goals set by the patient.
- Schedule follow-up contact (clinic visit, email, phone) to review readiness and goals.

# PACK Global Adult

## About the Knowledge Translation Unit

The Knowledge Translation Unit is a health systems research unit in the University of Cape Town Lung Institute, committed to improving the quality of primary health care for underserved communities worldwide through practical tools, evidence-based implementation and engagement of health systems, their planners, providers and end-users.

[www.knowledgetranslation.co.za](http://www.knowledgetranslation.co.za)

## About the University of Cape Town Lung Institute

The University of Cape Town Lung Institute, established in 1998, is a company owned by the University of Cape Town that addresses priority health issues in society through education, research and service, with a special focus on lung health and Southern Africa.

[www.lunginstitute.co.za](http://www.lunginstitute.co.za)

## About the University of Cape Town

The University of Cape Town is a South African university founded in 1928, with a proud tradition of academic excellence and effecting social change and development through its pioneering scholarship, faculty and students.

[www.uct.ac.za](http://www.uct.ac.za)

## About BMJ

BMJ is a healthcare knowledge provider that aims to advance healthcare worldwide by sharing knowledge and expertise to improve experiences, outcomes and value. For a full list of BMJ products and services, visit [www.bmj.com](http://www.bmj.com)

Follow us on Twitter.

Copyright © 2018, University of Cape Town Lung Institute (Pty) Ltd - all rights of copyright vesting in all the original works and material used by the University of Cape Town Lung Institute (Pty) Ltd in the preparation and development of the 2018 Global Edition.

